

also available in a book/CD package

teach yourself

modern persian

narguess farzad

- Do you want to cover the basics then progress fast?
- Do you want to communicate in a range of situations?
- Do you want to learn Modern Persian in depth?

Modern Persian starts with the basics but moves at an energetic pace to give you a good level of understanding, speaking and writing. You will have lots of opportunity to practice the kind of language you will need to be able to communicate with confidence and understand Modern Persian culture.

Born in Iran, Narguess Farzad was educated in Tehran and the University of London, where she now teaches Persian language and literature at the School of Oriental and African Studies.

 Visit www.books.mcgraw-hill.com to see our complete range of books.

Cover ● © Arthur Thévenart/Corbis ● Dome in the Tomb of Moshtagh-Ali Shah, Kerman, Iran

the leader in self-learning with more than 500 titles, covering all subjects be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



US \$16.95 / CAN \$24.95

ISBN 0-07-142028-2





teach® yourself

modern persian

narguess farzad

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be with teach yourself

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00-17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning - with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide - the teach yourself series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file

First published in UK 2004 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2004 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2004.

The teach yourself name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2004 Narguess Farzad

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London, W1T 4LP.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by g-and-w Publishing, Oxfordshire, UK. Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6

Year

2010 2009 2008 2007 2006

!	egy consumedants has you beautishingly a	
introductio		Vi
writing and	pronunciation	xix
01	greetings and meeting people	1
	greeting people, saying goodbye and	
	good night, saying 'thank you', 'you're	
	welcome' and 'please', saying days of	
	the week, months and seasons	
02	numbers	10
	using and writing cardinal and	
	ordinal numbers and qualifying	
	nouns, forming plurals, using 'this',	
	'that', 'these' and 'those'	
03	grammar reference unit	22
04	where are you from? what do you do?	26
	saying where you are from, asking	
	how someone is, giving basic	
	personal information, saying your	
	nationality and occupation	
05	family, friends and other people	35
	giving more personal information	
	using pronouns, describing	

characteristics using adjectives,

associations

describing family relationships and

06	is Iran's highest mountain higher	52
	than Mt Everest?	
	forming and using the comparative,	
	comparing two things, forming and	
	using the superlative	
07	where is it? what? whose is it? why?	60
	asking questions about time, place and	
	actions, talking about possession ('mine',	
	'your', etc.), using question words,	
	different functions of question words	i si me
08	likes and dislikes	69
	using the verb 'to have' (past and	None i
	present, saying some more about	
	yourself, talking about your likes and	
	dislikes, the indefinite 'a' and 'one'	
09	grammar reference unit	82
10	what are you learning?	85
	using simple verbs, forming the	
	simple past tense, using different	
	verbs for situations in the past	
11	how did you get here so quickly?	94
	describing how and where things	
	happened or were done	
12	have you seen Mina's new house?	99
	recognizing and forming other past	
	tense verbs, using 'but', using 'other'	
	with negative verbs	
13	an invitation to supper	110
	recognizing and applying more verbs,	
	forming and using compound verbs	
14	he saw me in the library; the man	117
	was seen	
	identifying the direct object of verbs,	
	recognizing and forming transitive	
	and intransitive verbs	

15	going for a quick snack	127
	forming the present tense, talking	
	about what is happening now	
16	grammar reference unit	135
17	in a huff, through the door	139
	using prepositions ('at', 'to', 'from',	
	'by', etc.), putting prepositions into	
	idiomatic use	
18	suggesting a visit to a friend	153
	asking for things, asking someone	
	to do something for you, expressing	
	wishes, hopes and plans	
19	planning a summer trip	159
	using the proper future tense,	
Dairis Of	talking about holidays and holiday	
	destinations	
20	how are you feeling?	163
	using idiomatic impersonal verbs,	A CHOR
	expressing more likes and dislikes,	
	describing the various stages of	
	going to sleep, saying you are tired,	
	saying you are having a good time	
21	grammar reference unit	170
the story	of Iran	173
taking it t	further	183
appendix	: complex grammar	184
key to the	e exercises	203
Persian-	English glossary	219
English-F	Persian glossary	244

contents

त्य अविकासक

introduction

Persian, known to native speakers as Farsi, is the official language of modern-day Iran and is spoken in many parts of Afghanistan and the central Asian republic of Tajikistan. Historically, it has been a much more widely understood language in an area ranging from the Middle East to India. Sizeable minority populations in other Persian Gulf countries (Bahrain, Iraq, Oman, People's Democratic Republic of Yemen and the United Arab Emirates), as well as large communities in Australia, Canada, Europe, Turkey, and the USA, also speak Persian.

The Persian spoken in Afghanistan is known as Dari. The dialectal variation between Farsi and Dari has been compared to that between European French and Canadian French.

The Persian language of Tajikistan is known as *Tajiki*, which is written in Cyrillic (as is Russian). Tajiki had minimal contact with other Persian-speaking countries during the Soviet era and contains a large number of Russian words.

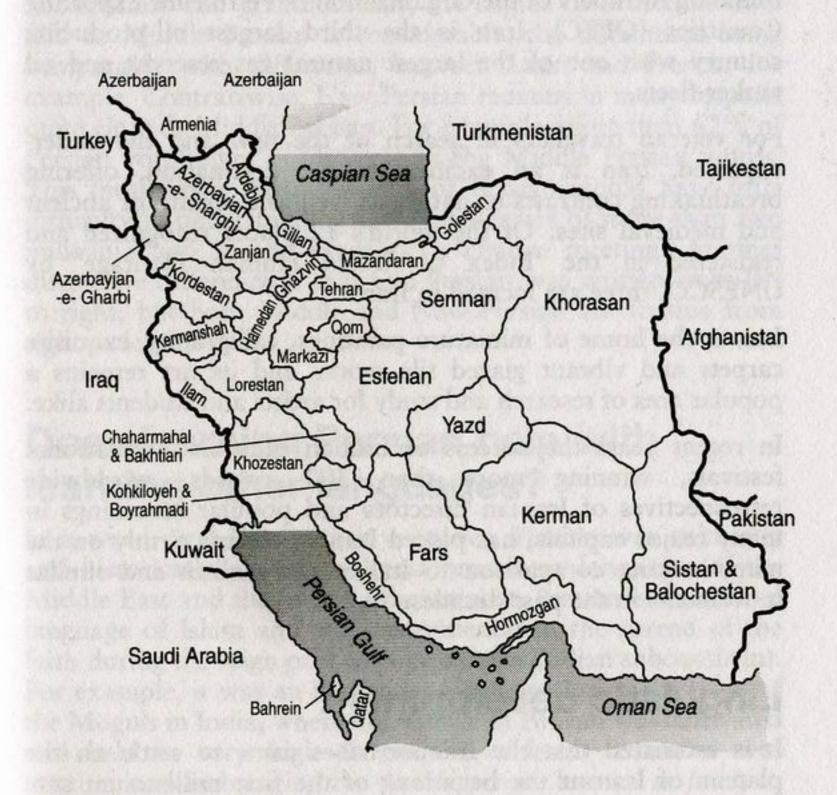
Modern Persian, also known as New Persian, is the linguistic continuation of Middle Persian, itself a successor to Old Persian, the language of ancient Iran up to about 330 BCE. Old, Middle and New Persian represent one and the same language at three stages of its history and development. Persian has its geographical origin in Fārs in central Iran with its famous city of Shiraz, homeland of some of Iran's most famous poets, enchanting rose gardens and lush orchards; this is, historically speaking, the true home of Persian, although dialectical features of Persian vary as you travel throughout Iran.

About Iran

Iran is one of the few countries that has had a continuing influence in shaping contemporary history and also played a prominent role in the early history of civilization.

Iran's history as a nation of people dates back to the second millennium BCE. In succession to the empires of Assyria and Babylon, Iran became the major power in the Middle East in the sixth century BCE, when the Persian Empire of Cyrus, Xerxes and Darius stretched from the shores of Greece to the edge of India. In the fourth century BCE Iran's hegemony was briefly interrupted by the short-lived dominion of Alexander the Great and his successors, but under the Parthian and Sasanian rulers Iran was again a dominant political power.

Iran's ancient religion, Zoroastrianism, is considered one of the earliest monolithic religions. It has probably influenced mankind more than any other faith, for it had a profound



impact on Judaism, Christianity and Islam. Strong adherence to Zoroastrian beliefs and rituals continues among its modern followers in Iran, India and throughout the world.

The Silk Road, a trade route that made ancient economic exchanges between the West and the East possible and allowed this delicate commodity to reach the markets in Rome, passed through Iran which acted as a major junction between these trading nations.

Iran is also an immensely fascinating modern state. One of the more significant countries of the Middle East with a predominantly young population of nearly 70 million and 16th in size among the countries of the world, Iran is located in one of the most strategically important parts of our planet, linking Central Asia and the Indo-Pakistani subcontinent to Europe.

Iran's role as a trading partner with the countries of the European Community is rapidly increasing. One of the founding members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), Iran is the third largest oil-producing country with one of the largest natural gas reserves and oil tanker fleets.

For veteran travellers in search of the new and the underexplored, Iran is an exciting tourist destination, offering breathtaking contrasts of nature as well as a wealth of ancient and medieval sites. Of the world's 12 places recognized and registered in the 'Index of World Human Heritage' by UNESCO, three are located in Iran.

Iran is the home of miniature paintings, calligraphy, exquisite carpets and vibrant glazed tile works and its art remains a popular area of research and study for artists and students alike.

In recent years the success of Iranian films in international festivals, winning more than 300 awards, worldwide retrospectives of Iranian directors and popular screenings in many major capitals, has placed Iranian cinema firmly on the map, inviting comparison to Italian neo-realism and similar movements in the past decades.

Linguistic development

It is estimated that the Iranian tribes came to settle on the plateau of Iran at the beginning of the first millennium BCE.

However, the most ancient traces of Old Persian date back to about 600 BCE. Examples of Old Persian are found in the form of inscriptions of Cyrus the Great and Darius I at Bisitun and Persepolis in Iran, sites that feature as highlights of archaeological tours of Iran.

By 400 BCE Old Persian was heading for extinction and a new system of linguistic expression with relatively greater simplicity was established as the lingua franca of the Persian Empire. Middle Persian became the official, religious and literary language of Iran in the third to seventh centuries CE.

By the end of the tenth century CE, some 300 years after the Islamic conquest, New Persian came to be written in the much clearer Arabic alphabet that replaced the old, Aramaic ideograms. Before long New Persian became spread over a much larger area extending to Xinjiang and to Central and South Asia.

Phonetically and grammatically, the degree of evolution from Old to Middle Persian is considerable, the differences being comparable with differences between Latin and French, for example. Contrariwise, New Persian remains in many respects quite close to Middle Persian. For example, more than 62% of Persian vocabulary is identical to the Middle Persian words. This means that most speakers of Persian would have little difficulty in understanding their forebearers of more than two millennia ago in the event of a chance meeting. Another distinctive difference is that Old Persian was written from left to right, but both Middle and New Persian are written from right to left.

Does learning Persian help with learning other languages?

In a word, yes! Until recent centuries, Persian was culturally and historically one of the most prominent languages of the Middle East and the Indian subcontinent. Persian is the second language of Islam and was instrumental in the spread of the faith during the reign of the Moguls in the Indian subcontinent. For example, it was an important language during the reign of the Moguls in India, where knowledge of Persian was cultivated and held in very high esteem. To a lesser extent it was instrumental in bringing the Arabic script, known as Jawi, to

Malaysia. Nowadays, Jawi is less commonly used and a Romanized Malay writing script has gained more of an official status. However, Jawi is written in the Perso-Arabic script. The use of Persian in the courts of Mogul rulers ended in 1837 when it was banned by officials of the East India Company, but not before the development of a Persian–Indian vernacular. Persian poetry is still a significant part of the literature of the Indo-Pakistani subcontinent.

Very close links between Persian and Urdu, and the presence of numerous Persian words in Turkish, offer a high degree of mutual intelligibility to speakers of these languages and the study of Ottoman Turkish literature without a knowledge of Persian would be meaningless. Malay also contains countless Persian words and for scholars of Malay literature a classical Persian dictionary is often among their most used reference books.

If you are interested in learning other modern Iranian languages, such as Baluchi or Kurdish, knowledge of Persian and the Perso-Arabic script helps. For example, all the languages in the following list are written in this script or were written in it until very recently: Assyrian, Southern Azeri spoken by 20 million people in Iran, Hausa (gradually superseded by Romanized script), Kashmiri, Punjabi of Pakistan, Pashtu, Sindhi and Uyghur, although there are now efforts underway to use an adapted Latin alphabet for writing in this language.

How difficult is Persian to learn?

New Persian, that is the language of modern Iran, is written in the Arabic script, but as a language it belongs to the Indo-European family of languages, which includes Sanskrit, Greek, Latin and English. This may in part explain why speakers of European languages find learning Persian relatively easy to begin with. Moreover, some basic vocabulary that is comparable to English, added to similarity of syntax, compensates for the initial strangeness of the alphabet. Words such as barādar 'brother', pedar 'father', mādar 'mother', setāre 'star', tārik 'dark', lab, 'lip', abru 'eyebrow', dar 'door', and many more illustrate the common Indo-European genealogy that English and Persian share.

Persian is not a very difficult language for English-speaking

people to learn, compared with any other major language of the Middle East or some European languages and is regarded as extremely sonorous and beautiful to listen to.

New Persian contains many foreign words, the majority of which are Arabic, which reflects the extent of cultural and intellectual exchanges between Iran and its neighbours and, of course, the impact of Islam since the seventh century CE.

The mixed character of modern Persian vocabulary is a basic feature of the language. A comparison can be made between Persian and English: the Arabic element in Persian has a similar status to that of Latin and Romance languages in relation to the original Anglo-Saxon of English.

In the past couple of centuries, Persian has also borrowed many loanwords from European languages. Most of these words are originally French and are uttered with a French pronunciation, ranging from the simple merci for 'thank you' to names of European items of clothing such as robe de chambre for 'dressing gown', cravate for 'tie', deux pièces 'ladies' skirt-suit', imperméable 'raincoat' or 'rainproof outerwear', manteau 'thin overcoat' (the staple outerwear of women in Iran today), sac 'bag' (pronounced sak), papillon 'bow' and many others. Other European words invariably accompanied the arrival of modern technologies or utilities in Iran, e.g. words such as telephone, television, radio, film, cinema, theatre, bus, pieces of machinery, decimal units of weights and measures, names of particular European dishes and some medical and modern scientific terminology. Again the majority of these terms are pronounced the French way.

At present Persian is the official language of Iran and although there are large areas of Iran where Persian is not the mother tongue, e.g. in Azerbaijan, Kurdistan or Luristan, it is *spoken* by most of the urban population. In Afghanistan, Dari Persian enjoys official status along with Pashtu.

Study of Persian in Europe

Apart from the early familiarity of a handful of British scholars with the names and works of some medieval Iranian scientists and philosophers, the first steps towards the study of Persian in Europe were taken in the early fourteenth century. Moreover, European travellers, merchants, missionaries and, of course, the

envoys and officers of European courts increasingly encountered Persian in the huge geographic sphere where it was spoken or existed as the lingua franca.

'Systematic' study of Persian in Europe, however, started in the seventeenth century with a steady increase in the number of Europeans interested in the orient and the literary treasures it offered.

In Britain alone this has resulted in the publication of numerous books of grammar, dictionaries and readers over the past 300 years written by diverse personalities ranging from envoys to adventurers, missionaries and traders, as well as the established scholars and orientalists. Some of these earlier books make for surprisingly good reads and provide portrayals not only of the linguistic conventions of the time and general approach to study of foreign languages but also fascinating descriptions of national characteristics of both the Persians and the visitors. The sketches offered in books to assist language acquisition, for example, tell a lot more about the circles in which the European emissaries moved and their main preoccupations than the usefulness of the manuals as a tool for learning Persian.

The importance of immersion in the real language as spoken by its native speakers, however, was recognized early on. Reverend William St Clair-Tisdall (1859-1928), for example, who served as the Secretary of the Church of England's Church Missionary Society in Esfahan in Iran and who has likened Persian to 'the Italian of the East', refers to his own difficulties in communicating with Persians. Having studied and learnt to speak Persian in Panjab in India he found, in the course of attempted conversations with the Persians he met in Bombay, that he was 'almost if not quite unintelligible to them, since many of the words, phrases and idioms he had learnt from the pages of Sa'di and other classical Persian authors had become obsolete and had been superseded by others in the modern language as spoken in Persia itself'. He writes in his introduction to Modern Persian Conversation Grammar (1923): 'It was as if a foreigner, having discovered some corner of the world in which English was still spoken by the learned, just as it occurs in the Elizabethan writers and with the pronunciation of that distant day, had learnt the language from them and then tried to converse with the English people of today.' Reverend St Clair-Tisdall concludes that the conversation of such a novice 'would seem at once stilted and

vulgar, and it would amuse everyone with whom he came in contact'.

In this remarkably good and solid grammar book there are gems of conversational topics such as the dialogue between the 'table servant' and 'master', discussing a dinner party menu:

Master

Table servant What kind of meat do you wish today for dinner, Sir?

Can venison be procured?

Table servant No, Sir, it cannot be got, because they do not bring venison here, and no one can get it unless his Royal Highness or one of his hunting companions sends it to someone as a present. Well, get ready hare or some ducks or pigeons or

Master

quails or any kind of game that you can procure.

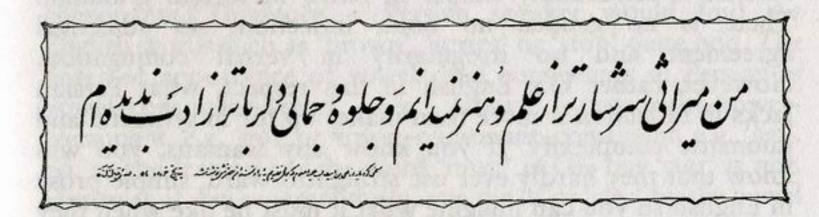
The table servant then suggests buying some onions from the market among other vegetables and fruits, but the master is not impressed:

Master

I dislike onions and garlic because they smell very unpleasant..

By the same token, the conversation between the 'head of the customhouse' and the 'traveller' could be reminiscent of any such current exchange, at various ports of entry into most modern countries.

Basic characteristics of Persian



Nastaligh calligraphy. Quotations from Imam Ali Ibn-Abi Talib

Persian is written from right to left in the cursive, that is joinedup, Perso-Arabic script. This script can be most ornamental and, in this respect, Iranians more than others who use this script have made the art of calligraphy and refined penmanship their own. Towards the end of this introduction I say a little about some of the traditional instruments that are used for Persian calligraphy. The so-called Perso-Arabic script has

innovations that accommodates sounds such as *ch*, as in 'chair' or *p* as in 'Paris' that do not exist in Arabic but are part of Persian.

The Persian alphabet has 32 letters. All of these, with the exception of the first letter, alef I are consonants. However, two of the letters of the alphabet have a dual existence and can function as symbols for long vowels too. These are the letters 'v', and 'y', that can respectively represent the long vowels 'u' and 'i'.

It is important, however, to point out early on that seven letters of this alphabet are best described as one-way letters and when it comes to writing down the words, they behave differently from the other 25 letters. I shall go over this point in much more detail later on as we start learning the script.

There are no capital letters in the Perso-Arabic script.

For reasons of simplicity I shall suggest that there are six vowels in Persian: three long and three short vowels.

Unlike English, the three short vowels are not written down. However, to help you learn to read properly all short vowels will be marked in the initial units of this book by using a system of diacritics or 'pointing' with small indicating signs. All long vowels are and must be written in with the use of the 'ā', which is the first letter of the alphabet or the other consonants that represent 'i' and 'u'.

Persian is remarkably simple in terms of formal grammar. There is no gender, no noun inflection, no adjectival agreement and no irregularity in verbal conjugation. However, rather like English in this respect, what Persian lacks in inflection it more than makes up for in syntactic and idiomatic complexity. If you know any Iranians, you will know that they hardly ever use straightforward, simple prose in English so you can imagine what it must be like when they speak Persian! But do not despair: acquiring a sound, basic foundation in the language will enable you gradually to expand and develop your knowledge of Persian and appreciate the ornate vernacular, which is adored and used to great effect by all Iranians.

This brings us to the second major hurdle, which is the acquisition of vocabulary, but that is true of any language where the students start from the absolute beginning -

remember as an Indo-European speaker you have a head start with quite a lot of vocabulary.

Look at the following examples of commonly used Persian and English words with Indo-European connections:

English	Persian	
better	behtar	
bezoar	pādzahr	
body	badan	
candy	qand	
cow	gāv	
dark	tarik	
dental	dandān	
door	dar	
drug	dāru (orig: dārug)	
graft	gereftan	The Reviews
group	gorouh	
intern	andarun	
iron	āhan	
juvenile	javān	
physician	pezeshk	
star	setāre	

By taking a few certain rules into account you will see a closer similarity still between the words in the list. The first rule is that, unlike English, no Persian word begins with two consonants. Therefore, a Persian speaker would find the English words such as 'brown', 'script' or 'stop' quite odd. The order of appearance of vowels and consonants in Persian is vowel-consonant-vowel, e.g. 'above', consonant-vowel-consonant, e.g. 'got' or vowel-consonant-consonant, e.g. 'act'. So, to the Iranian ear the word 'must' is OK but 'star' is not. However, if you separate the 's' and the 't' of 'star' by the vowel 'e' you will get the equivalent Persian word setāre, which is how the word is pronounced.

Another observation is that over the course of the development of Indo-European languages certain letters in one group have been changed into another. For example, 'f' and 'v', or 'd' and 't' seem to replace one another in words that evidently have a common root. For example, the English 'dark' becomes even closer to the Persian *tārik* if we replace the 'd' with the 't'.

In the worlds of flora and fauna, too, there are similarities between Persian and English names of some plants and herbs.

First steps

To begin with, this course will emphasize the written element of Persian until the user comes to grips with the letters and reading the script and feels able to follow the fundamental, elementary aspects of grammar. However, this will not be done at the expense of the spoken tongue, i.e. the colloquial language that reflects the day-to-day exchanges of all levels of society in Iran. I have attempted to familiarize the user of this book with educated contemporary, standard Persian as written and spoken in Tehran and broadcast to the world in radio, TV and used in many Iranian films.

Intonation

One of the hardest things about learning a new language is trying to copy the voice pitch and the intonation of the native speakers. I think it would be fair to say that learning to speak like an Iranian is nowhere near as difficult as learning to speak like an Italian, but one or two hints may be helpful.

In most Persian words the stress is on the last syllable. In affirmative sentences there is usually a rise in the pitch just before the verb, but in negative sentences the pitch rises on the negative verb.

Question words in Persian, 'how', 'who', 'where', 'why' and others, normally carry the stress which is opposite of what happens in English. In fact, stress on the question words in English can sound menacing and gives the impression of aggression. In Persian, however, it is not unusual to put the stress on the interrogatives.

Script

Nastaliq, the style of writing most popular in Iran, is an art in which laws of mathematics and nature are obeyed. It enables the artist to create a beautiful piece of calligraphy by using several forms of the same letter or by employing various forms of the words and using them in different compositions. With its mystifying beauty, nastaliq has closely accompanied Persian poetry and has played an important role in communicating the

poetic concepts to the readers. Looking at the works of calligraphers, both modern and traditional, reveals that nastaliq has served both literature and mysticism. In fact, compared to other poets, the poems of Hafiz and Rumi have most often been used by artists. In Persian culture and art, poetry, traditional music and calligraphy are intimately related and are complementary elements.

The most basic tools of a calligrapher are his reed pens known as *qalam* and his ink. The pens are traditionally carved from the reeds taken from the reedbeds of southern Iran, by the shores of the Persian Gulf. Calligraphers then use their penknives or very sharp blades to cut the nib and to trim it until the desired shape of the pen is achieved. The pens range in length from 20 cm to almost 30 cm and are 1–1½ cm thick.

Calligraphers develop a profound knowledge and almost an instinct of how to spot the best cane suitable for a good pen, how to trim the nib and, finally, to create the perfect writing instrument. A good pen is treasured and rarely is it lent to another person as its use over the years almost moulds it to the demands and expectations of its owner.

Inks can be in many colours including black, brown, yellow, red, blue, white, silver and gold and, with the aid of new technology and changing trends in writing styles, more vivid coloured inks are also being developed. In the old days, many calligraphers refined the formulas of making the best ink but their recipes, based on complex chemical experiments, were usually carefully guarded secrets.

The arrival of paper in Iran from China in the mid eighth century was a turning point in the art of writing. Paper was made from cotton and occasionally from silk.

Geometric principles play an essential role in Persian calligraphy, which adheres very strictly to the rules of dimension and proportion. The *alef* provides a unit of measure for all the other letters of the alphabet.

The size of the dot is also of crucial importance. The dot is a diamond or square impression made by pressing the nib of the pen on to paper.

Depending on the calligrapher and the style of the script he is working on, the height of the *alef* can vary from three to 12 dots. The width of the *alef* is usually equivalent to one dot.

x introduction

You will, of course, find that your initial attempts at handwriting will look shaky and uncertain. Perhaps the letters you write down may not always look the same or uniform, but don't lose heart. It will take a while before you achieve a good, legible style of writing. Even those Iranians who pride themselves in having nice handwriting will baulk at the prospect of writing with traditional writing tools, which is the ultimate test of being able to write accurately and beautifully.

This is perhaps as good a place as any to return to the purpose of writing this book, tempting as it is to go on about the artistic aspects of the written language. This is perhaps an appropriate moment also to remind the readers that this book does not promise to teach its users all the complex aspects of the Persian language. That would be a foolish promise to make and to my knowledge no book has ever achieved it. Later sections of the book give you glimpses of the complex grammar, and the 'Taking it futher' section will point you in the direction of further academic studies of Persian. My aim is to whet your appetite sufficiently and to give you enough of a solid grounding to persuade you that Persian is really not a very difficult language to learn and to entice you to use this book as the basis for a more fundamental study of the language.

The following two icons may be found in the book: D indicates that the material is on the recording; i indicates that the section provides extra cultural information.

The opening lines of the preface that Alexander Finn (1847–1919) wrote for his *Persian for Travellers* in 1885 as an aid 'to those holding intercourse with the natives', offers an apt ending for this introduction: 'This is a work of no pretensions.' However, I hope it will equip you on the start of a journey of discovery into one of the East's most enchanting languages and the immense body of writing that is written in this language.

alabaration will be reducted by the language of the particular to the restaurant of the contract of the contra

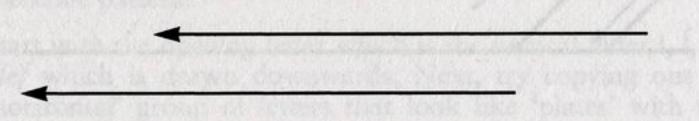
xix

Writing a

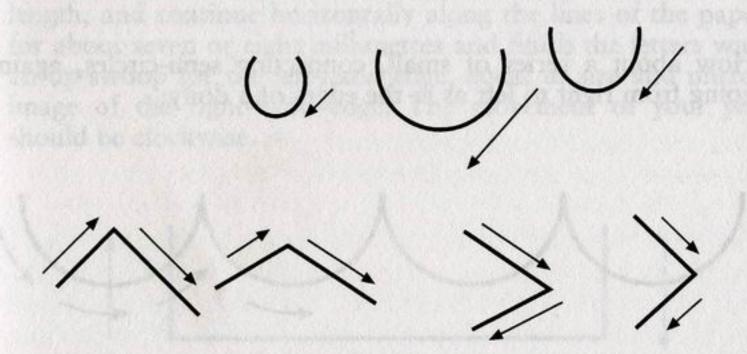
How to write Persian

Before we even look at the alphabet let us first try the following exercises:

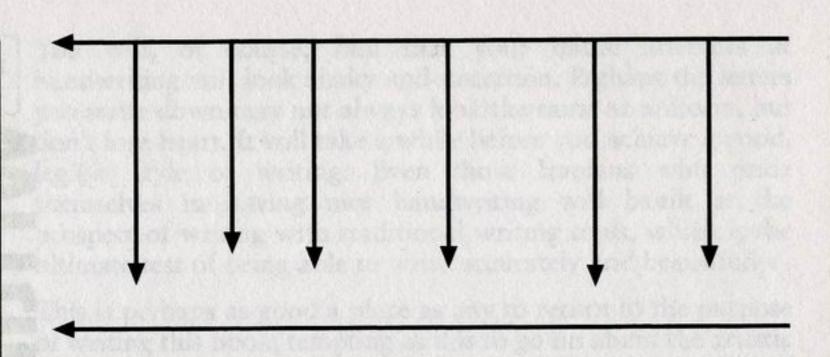
Can you draw straight, horizontal lines from right to left?



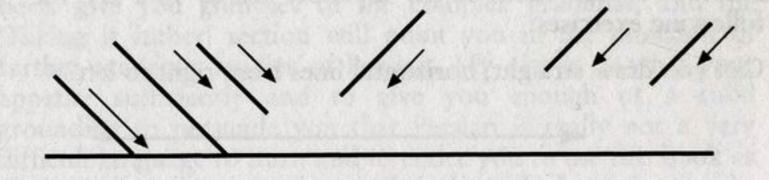
Can you draw semi-circles and parts of triangles going clockwise?

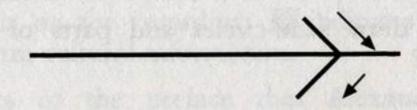


Try sketching a railway line by drawing the tracks from right to left and then a series of connecting sleepers, vertically from top to bottom.

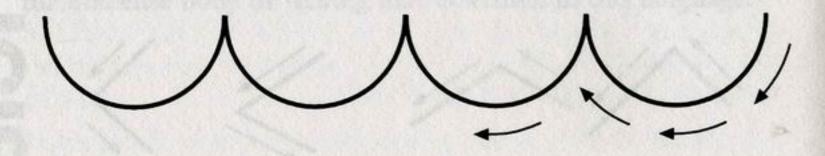


Can you do back slashes and the mirror image above the line; can you draw lines meeting at an angle in one sweep of the pen, like the tip of an arrow?

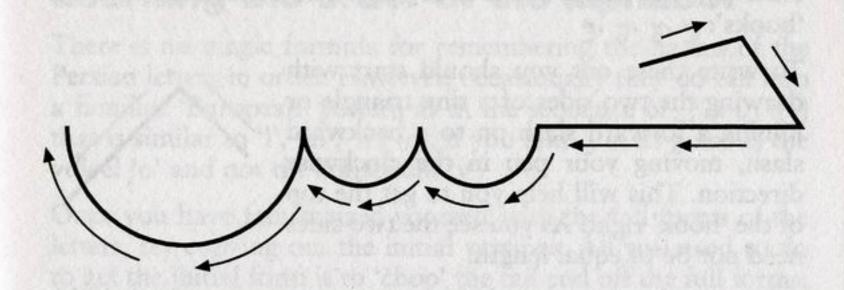




How about a series of small, connecting semi-circles, again going from right to left as in the edges of a doily:

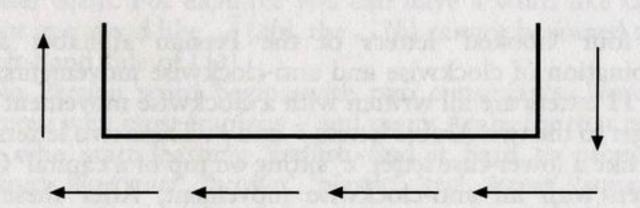


A combination of the above movements without taking your pen off the paper?



If you find these exercises easy, then you are ready to start learning the alphabet.

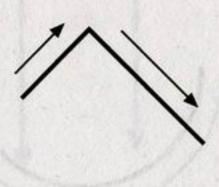
To begin with, you should try to write the full, unconnected form of the letters and don't worry about other forms until you are confident about copying these full shapes. Luckily, the Perso-Arabic letters of the alphabet fall into patterns and different number of dots distinguish one letter from another in the same pattern.



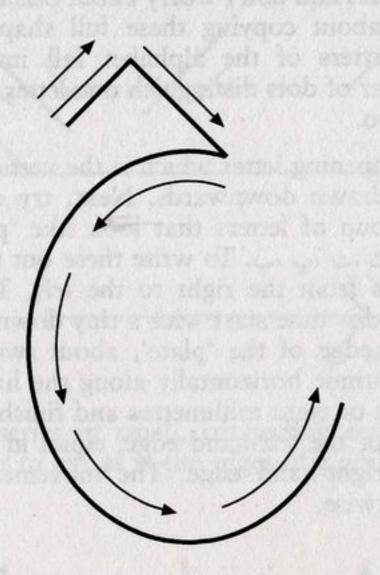
Don't forget the dots!

Now try your hands at the next pattern of letters that look like 'hooks': לי, הי הי הי הי

To write these out you should start with drawing the two sides of a tiny triangle or joining a forward slash on to a backward slash, moving your pen in the clockwise direction. This will help you to get the top of the 'hook' right. As you see the two sides need not be of equal length:



Once you have mastered this movement try combining this shape with the curved bottom which looks like a capital 'C' letter. The letter 'C' shape has to be drawn in an anti-clockwise movement, as it is in English. The size is over-exaggerated to make it easier for you to follow the movement:



The four 'hooked' letters of the Persian alphabet are a combination of clockwise and anti-clockwise movements. The next 11 letters are all written with a clockwise movement until you get to the two Arabic letters ع and ¿. These two letters that look like a lower-case letter 'c' sitting on top of a capital 'C' are written with an anti-clockwise movement. After these two letters, the rest of the alphabet is written in the clockwise direction.

Learning the order of the alphabet

There is no magic formula for remembering the names of the Persian letters in order. However, occasionally they do fall into a familiar 'European' pattern as in the sequence of (و)، ن، م، ل) that is similar to 'l', 'm', 'n', (o), if you take في in its guise as the vowel 'o' and not the consonant 'v'.

XXIII

writing and pronunciation

Once you have familiarized yourself with the full forms of the letters, try copying out the initial versions. All you need to do to get the initial form is to 'chop' the tail end off the full forms, from the left-hand side. The initial forms are those that appear at the beginning of a word. However, don't forget to leave the identifying dots intact.

For example, if you cut the tail end off the letter up you will get . Similarly after cutting the tail end off the letter z you should be left with _ . The initial form of a letter such as \(\sigma \) should look like .

you will lose the deep final curve ض، ش، س you will lose the deep final curve and should replace this with an extra 'tooth':

Reminder

1 Never forget to put in the all-important dots, otherwise the letters will be meaningless shapes.

2 Seven letters of the alphabet never change their shape as nothing can be attached to their left side. I refer to these letters as 'one-way' letters. They are: $\bar{1}$ or $\bar{1}$ (\bar{a}) , $\bar{1}$ (d), $\bar{1}$ (z), (r), j(z), j(zh), j(v or o/u).

These letters can be connected to a preceding letter from the right side, but will not join onto any letter that comes after them. For example you can have a word like \((ba) \) but in a word like $(\bar{a}b)$, the (b) cannot be joined to the left-hand side of I (a).

No Persian word begins with two consonants. Now you know why most Iranians - and many Arabs for that matter - who start learning English find it hard to pronounce words like 'start', 'brown', 'plastic', 'try', 'street', 'square' or 'bus stop' and instead have to say estar, pelastic, teray, esquare or sequare or bus-estop. A sequence of consonants can only appear after an initial vowel or in the middle or at the end of a word.

The following table gives you the full list of the Persian alphabet including the names of the letters and the phonetic pronunciation.

Take your time and spend a good few days just tracing the letters of the alphabet to get the shape right and then try to remember which consonant they represent.

		Connected	Connected	Connected	Final, full form
Sound in English	Name of letter	End of word or attached to previous letter	Middle or in between two letters	Initial or followed by another letter	Unconnected, standing alone
a and initial vowels a, e, o	alef*	L			l or Ĩ*
b	be	ب	·		ب داه ادر
p	pe	پ	4	4	پ
t	te	ت	ت	ت	4+ ~
s	se	ث ا		ث	* minder
j	jim	ج	ج الله	خ نه وه	5
ch	che	₹			E
he	he	ح	of had a		7
kh or x	khe	خ	·	4.44	†
d	dal*	د	٠د	د راد است	د
z	zal*	ذ	ذ	ن	3
r	re*	ـر	ـر	ر	,
z	ze*	<u>;</u>	ـز	ن	;
zh	zhe*	ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	3	3
s	sin	س		. o b	<u>س</u>
sh	shin	ش		ش	m m

	sa susiq sigle of	Connected	Connected	Connected	Final, full form	
Sound in Name of English letter		End of word or attached to previous letter	Middle or in between two letters	Initial or followed by another letter	Unconnected standing alone	
s	sād	ص			ص	
z	zād	ض	خـ	ضـ	ض	
t	tā	ط	ط	ط	ط	
z	zā	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	
' (a)	'ain	ع	ع	e	ع	
gh	ghain	غ	i	غ	غ	
f	fe	ف	<u>à</u>	فـ	ف	
q	qaf	ق	<u>ā</u>	ق	ق	
k	kāf	ک		ک	ک	
g	gāf	گ		ک	گ	
l	lam	ل	<u>1</u>	B. J. W	J	
m	mim	۰۰۰۰		ه	٩	
n	nun	ن	<u>``</u>	ن	ن	
v, w, u and o	บลบ*	و	و	و	'و	
h	he	٠		هـ	6	
y, i	ye	٠٠٠٠ي	1		ی	

^{*}The seven letters with an asterisk next to them are called 'oneway' letters in this book and this means that no letter of the alphabet can be joined on to their left-hand side.

The grid below is provided as a 'tracing template' so that you can practise writing the individual letters of the alphabet.

1	1	i	í	Í	Ĩ	Ĩ	Ĩ
ņ	ŗ	ب	å	å	له	Í	` -
ث	Ů	Ç	ij) **	Ç	7"	7
E	9	2	2	47	Ļ	רי	ت
-	1	1"	4	ż	ż	3	5
j	٠,	,	J	ذ	ذ	د	. د
	3	Ü	m	w	m	ژ	ژ
ض	111773777777		THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE		ص		
3					ظ		
ف	ė	ف	ف	غـ	ė	غ	غ
2	گ	ک	ک	ق	ق	ق	ق
-		م	م	L	٢	J	J
0	٥	9	9	ن	نـ	ن	ن

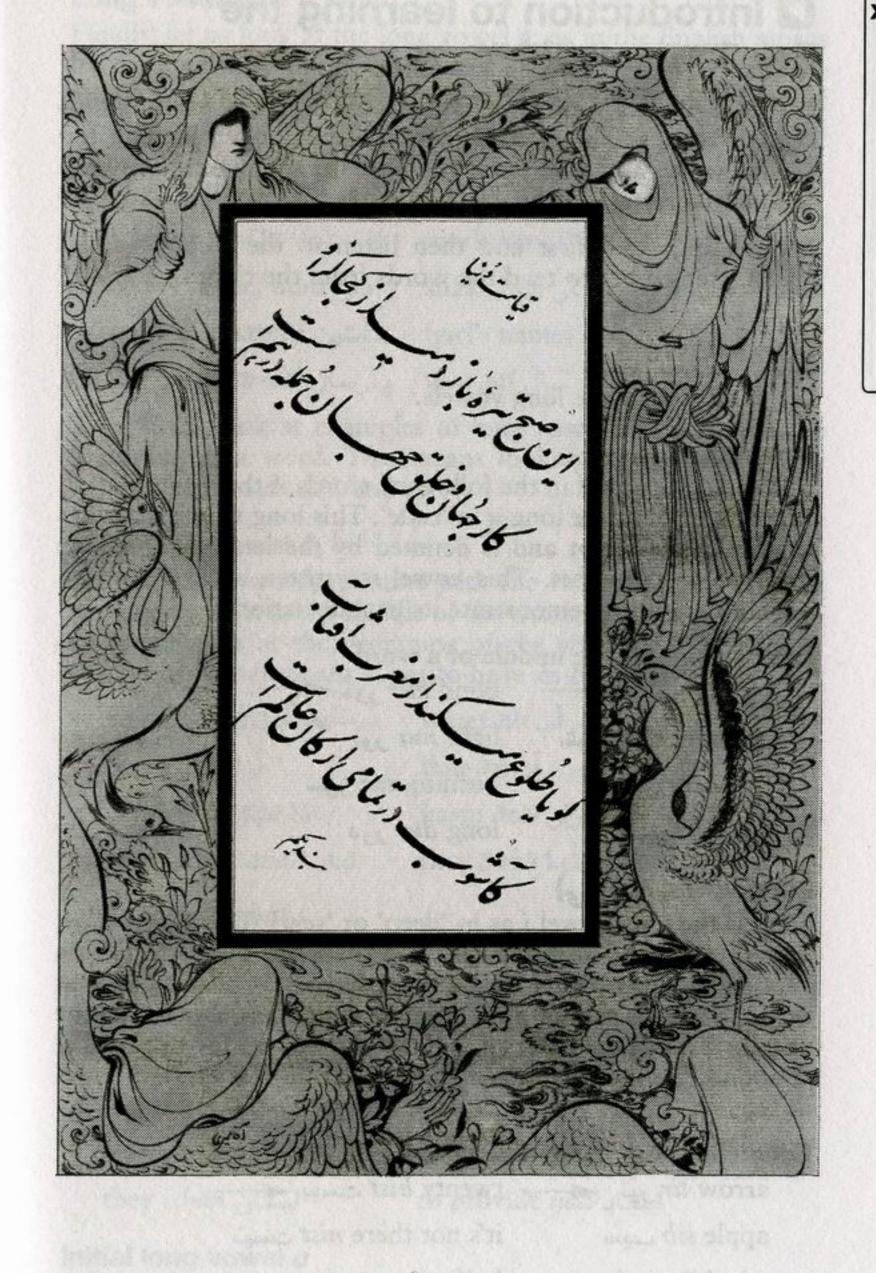
يـ	ي	S	S	+	+	4	4
					4		
				i de la companya de l			
		rci					

Exercise 1

Can you write the following letters as one word?

writing and pronunciation

٧ م + ر + ج + ١ + ن ٨ ن + ١ + ظ + م ٩ ١ + \$ + د + ر ١٠م + ق + ى + ١ + س 111 + س + ت + ر + ۱ + ح + ت ١١٢ + ج + ١ + ق 14 و + ر + ا + ث 1۴ک + و + ج + ک 10 خ + ی + ا + ب + ان 14 گ + ا + ر + ی ١٧م + و + ق + ع ١٨ س + و + س + ک 19 ل + ا + ک + پ + ش + ت ۲۰م + و + ش + ک ١٢١ + ص + ف + ه + ١٢١ ٢٢ ض + ر + ر 77世十十十十 ٢٤ ط + ا + و + و + س ٢٥ ي + و + ا + ش + ك + ي ٢٤ + ت + ا + ب + خ + ا + ن + ه ٥ + ٥ + ١ + ١ + ٥ ٢٧ 79 + 1 + 6 + 1 + 6 ٠ + ن + ف + ي + ر



Example of 'chalipaa' style of Persian nastaligh calligraphy

x writing and pronunciation

☐ Introduction to learning the Persian vowels

Try reading the following words that contain examples of Persian vowels. This is just an exercise to help you read the Persian words and familiarize you with the sound of the vowels, so don't worry about the meaning of the words.

Try reading them first and then listen to the recording and repeat. Remember to read the words from the right to the left!

Long vowels

Let us start with the long vowels.

Long vowel u, 9

The first long vowel in the following words is the u sound as in 'woo' or 'zoo' or the long u in 'rude'. This long vowel is always written in the script and is denoted by the letter g, the 30th letter of the alphabet. This vowel is written as u in English transliteration, to demonstrate its pronunciation.

Long vowel u in the middle of a word

joy/salty shur نور light nur نور blind kur نور joy/salty shur نور burning suz سوز burning suz مور ant mur مور

لی) یہ Long vowel i, ہے (ی)

Next is the long vowel i as in 'deep' or 'seat'. This vowel must be written in the script and is denoted by the last letter of the Persian alphabet which is c. In this section, we are looking at the long vowels as they appear in the *middle* of the word so the middle form of the letter c, which is c, is c in English.

Long vowel i in the middle of a word

arrow tir تير twenty bist سيب apple sib نيست it's not there nist نيست wire/silver sim سيم half nim نيم before pish سيمين made of silver simin پيش

Long vowel ā, I

Finally, let us look at the long vowel \bar{a} , as in the English words 'father', 'cart' or 'sarnie'. Like the other two long vowels, the long \bar{a} must be written in the script by using the middle form of the first letter of the alphabet \tilde{l} , which is l. The long vowel \tilde{l} is shown as \bar{a} in English transliteration.

Long vowel \bar{a} in the middle of a word

unclear tār تار work kār كار work kār مار (boy's name) dārā دارا snake mār مار machine māshin ماشين (girl's name) sārā سارا last year pār-sāl پارسال year sāl

Now let us look at examples of long vowels appearing at the beginning of a word. This means looking at words with the initial long vowels \bar{a} , i, and u.

Initial long vowel ā, Ĩ

The following words all start with the vowel \bar{a} . Some contain the long vowel \bar{a} in the middle of the word, too. The long vowel \bar{a} that appears at the beginning of the word must always be written as $\tilde{1}$, that means it has to have its little hat:

sun āftāb اَن water āb آن that ān آن that ān آن gentleman āqā آقا harm āzār آزار they ānhā أنها they ānhā

Initial long vowel i

The initial long vowel i sounds like the 'ea' in 'eat' or 'ease' or the 'ee' in 'seen'. In the Persian script the initial long vowel i is written in as $\exists i$:

here injā اینجا this in اینجا Iran irān ایران stop ist ایست (boy's name) iraj ایران faith imān ایران they ishān ایجاد to provide ijād

Initial long vowel u

Well, luckily for all learners of the Persian language I can think of only one word that begins with the long vowel u, as in 'ooze'

or 'oodles' - you see there are not many English words beginning with 'u' sound either. The initial long vowel u is written as in the Persian script. This one and only common Persian word that is written with an initial long vowel u happens to be just that: او which is a third person, singular pronoun, meaning 'he' or 'she':

he, she u \downarrow

There are three clear final long vowels in Persian that must be written in the script and are represented by the letter I a as in 'papa' or 'Toyota', & i as in 'see', 'me' or 'happy' and u as in 'shoe', 'you' or 'goo'. These vowels can be attached to the previous letter or they may stand alone, depending on which letter precedes them.

Final long vowel ā

air/weather havā موا father bābā بابا

up/high bālā كالب alone tanhā تنها

here inja اینجا أنها they anhā

to watch tamāshā اشامة acceptable rava 19

Final long vowel i &

tea-pot quri قوری 🕳 who ki کی

what chi play/game bāzi بازى

greyhound tāzi تازى قالى carpet qāli

تاكسى taxi tāksi may sini سيني

Final long vowel u 9

upper arm bāzu بازو → knee zānu زانو

lady bānu بانو blanket patu پتو

scent bu بو دارو drug daru

جارو broom jāru کفتگو conversation goftogu

Short vowels

The three Persian short vowels are not usually written in the script; however, to make it easier for learners to read the words, or to avoid ambiguity later on, a system of markers known as diacritics is used and these symbols are placed either above or

below a consonant, such as n, to indicate whether this consonant is read as, for example, na, or ne or no.

XXXIII

writing and pronunciation

Short vowel markers

The marker used to indicate the short vowel a, as in 'at' or 'apple', is a tiny forward slash (_) placed above the consonant that comes before the vowel, i.e. placed above the letter of the alphabet that carries this vowel. For example, na will be written as i, while nā, with a long vowel will be written as i. Try reading the following examples of words that contain the short vowel a _:

Short vowel a in the middle of a word

I man من axe tabar تبر مقط only fagat دفتر only fagat دفتر news khabar خبر night shab شب سرد cold sard (boy's name) hasan حسن

Short vowel e

The short vowel e as in 'egg', is also indicated by a small marker in the shape of a tiny forward slash, however, the e is placed underneath the letter of the alphabet (_) that carries its sound. So if a consonant such as n is followed by an e this will be indicated in writing as: in ne.

Short vowel e in the middle of a word

Examples of words where the short vowel e appears in the middle position:

heavens sepehr like mesl مثل زرشک redcurrant zereshk قرمز red qermez کرم worm kerm دل heart del eyes cheshm چشم زمستان winter zemestān

Short vowel o

The third short vowel is o, pronounced as in 'old', 'hope' and 'boat'. This vowel is marked by placing a tiny comma sign (_) above the letter that carries it. For example the letter n followed by the vowel o looks like this in Persian: 2.

Short vowel o in the middle of a word

Here are some examples of words that contain the vowel o in the medial position:

big bozorg بزُرگ big bozorg مُرغ bird morgh مُرغ large dorosht دُرُشت camel shotor شُدُر morning sobh مُشت fistful mosht مُشت he/she said goft

We have looked at the short vowels appearing mid-word, but what about words that begin with a short vowel? How are these *initial short vowels* indicated?

One very important point to remember is that although short vowels are generally not represented in the Persian script, the initial short vowels must be written in. The three initial shorts vowels in Persian are:

1 a, as in 'apple' or 'aspect' 1 e, as in 'egg' or 'end' 1 o, as in 'old' or 'open'

Try reading the following examples of words beginning with short vowels.

Initial short vowel a

(boy's name) ahmad اُحمد clouds abr اُبر horse asb أست horse asb أست frown akhm اُحم المحمد origin asl أطلس brocade/Atlantic atlas

Initial short vowel e

exams emtehān امتحان name esm اسم this year emsāl امسال tonight emshāb امشب المشب kindness ehsān احسان contact ertebāt ارتباط possibility emkān امکان today emruz

Initial short vowel o

hope omid اميد bus otobus اميد bus otobus اميد camp/Urdu ordu اُردو master ostād اُستاد room otāq اُلگو pattern olgu اُلگو steady ostovār اُستُوار he/she/it fell oftād

If a word in Persian ends with a *final short vowel*, then this vowel must be represented in the script. The final short vowels are not written by using the usual markers of ____; instead we 'borrow' two letters of the alphabet to show that the word ends with an a, an e or an o. We use the final forms of the letter s/__, representing also 'h', to indicate the presence of a vowel a or e at the end of the word. Final short vowels 'a' and 'e' are not too common in English, except in words such as 'visa' or 'cobra' (and perhaps a slang pronunciation of 'footballer' where the 'r' is almost omitted!). But Italian pronunciation of words like 'donna' and 'casa' or 'bene' and 'nome' may give you some idea of what the final short vowels a and e sound like in Persian.

To show the presence of the vowel o at the end of the word, we 'borrow' the letter of 'v' and pronounce it as something between an 'o' and an 'ow'. Final short vowel 'o' sounds like 'go' or 'hello' or 'woe' or 'toe'.

Final short vowel a _

Fortunately, in the educated Tehran accent that has been used as the model in this book, there is only one common word that ends with the sound 'a', and that is the informal word for 'no': in a. (Bear in mind that in many rural and regional dialects many words that end with an 'e' sound in Persian are pronounced with an 'a' ending.)

Final short vowel e _ (a 4_)

Note that in the following examples, I have used the marker $_$ at the end here to indicate the presence of the short vowel \acute{e} , but this is not usually done in writing:

house khāne خانه letter nāme منامه fruit mive ميوه cooked pokhte يُخته simple sāde ميوه simple sāde باغچه small garden bāghche سَبْرَه small garden bāghche

Note: The 'helper' letters \bullet \bullet (h acting as e) and \circ (v acting as o) are only read as final short vowels e and o when they come after a consonant; however, if they follow a vowel, they are then read as proper consonants h and v. Example: hade (final short vowel e) but \bullet māh (proper 'h' ending). Similarly, \circ gu (\circ acting as vowel u) but \circ gāv (proper v ending).

Final short vowel o _ (e) (almost an 'ow')

There are not many common words in Persian that end with this o sound:

Exercise 2

a	Read the following words out loud:
	Read the following words out loud: - کتاب - کوچه - میخ - صابون - کاشی - کِتاب - کوچه - میخ
	مريم - آقا - شيراز - افغان - إمروز - ايزد - اشك - طاقحِه -
	كوشش – آرامگاه – كاغَذ – اصفَهان – ارجان – عُقاب

b Copy out the words used in this unit to practise your writing skills further.

Exercise 3

Write the following words in Persian, paying attention to the vowels. Remember, short vowels are not written unless they appear at the begining or the end of a word. Try to indicate their presence, however, by using the three little markers.

1	fardā	14 zard
2	palang	15 havā
3	boshqāb	16 emshab
4	āchār	17 irland
5	ātash	18 shirin
6	vājeb	19 dokhtar
	namak	20 bist
531105	kuchak	21 bimārestān
9.5	akbar	22 shomā
	zohr	23 hadaf
	gusht	24 'amu
	khāne	25 khāle
	gahve	



In this unit you will learn how to

- greet people
- say goodbye and goodnight
- say 'thank you', 'you're welcome' and 'please'
- say the days of the week and seasons

Listen to the following informal and formal ways of saying 'hello' and 'goodbye'.

hello, dear	salām maryam jān!	سلام مريم جان!
Maryam hello, darling	salām 'azizam sobh be-kheyr bābak	سلام عَزيزَم صبع بخير بابك
good morning, Babak		
good day, madam	ruz be-kheyr khānom	روز بخیر خانم
goodbye, Mrs Farhadi	khodā-hāfez khānom farhādi	خُداحافِظ خانُم فرهادى
goodbye, till tomorrow	khodā-hāfez tā fardā	خُداحافِظ، تا فردا
goodnight, my son	shab be-kheyr pesaram	شُب بخیر پِسُرَم
goodnight, (dear) mum	shab be-kheyr māmān jān	شُب بِخِير مامان جان
goodbye, kids	khodā-hāfez bache-hā	خُداحافِظ بَچِهِها
farewell, safe journey	khodā negahdār, safar be-kheyr	خُدانِگَهدار، سَفَر بِخِیر

Learning a few basic, polite phrases in Persian could not be easier and it will earn you a lot of Brownie points.

Yes' and 'no'; 'hello' and 'goodbye'

Try out these phrases on your own and then listen to the recording:

bale بله	yes (formal)
آره āre	yup, yes (informal)
آره āre ina	no (informal)
nakheyr نخير	no (formal)
salām سُلام	hello, hi! (can be used any time of day or night)
dorud دُرود	hi! greetings!

sobh-bekheyr صبح بخير good morning ruz-bekheyr روز بخير good day (formal or on TV and radio) 'asr-bekheyr عصر بخير good afternoon (used in formal settings) shab-bekheyr شب بخير goodnight (when it's time to leave or bedtime) safar-bekheyr سفر بخير safe journey (bon voyage) khodā-hāfez خداحافظ goodbye, farewell khodā-negahdār خدانگهدار goodbye (God keep you safe) tā fardā تا فردا till tomorrow (informal) mibinamet مىبينمت see you (informal, addressed to one person)

Always listen out for other native speakers greeting you first, you can then just imitate them. If you know a person's name you should use it or otherwise prefix your greeting by 'mister' or 'madam' on more formal occasions:

. سلام مريم salām Maryam Hello, Maryam.

salām, sobh- Hi! Good morning, سلام. صبح بخير پرويز. bekheyr parviz Parviz.

> 'asr-bekheyr Good afternoon, sir. (addressed to a man you do not know)

shab-bekheyr شب بخير عزيزم. 'azizam Good night, my dear.

khodāhāfez خُداحافظ خانم. Goodbye, madam. khānom (Miss or Mrs)

.khodā-negahdār Goodbye, Mrs Salimi خدانگهدار خانم سليمي khānom-e Salimi

By now you may have worked out that the phrase بخير bekheyr means 'good, well or pleasant' as in 'good morning' or 'good journey'.

Exercise 1

How would you greet a female shopkeeper in the morning; neighbour's little boy Ahmad; your friend's grandfather in the afternoon? Say 'goodbye' to Maryam; 'goodnight' to Babak, 'safe journey' to Mr Shams.

Listen to the following semi-formal exchange of niceties:

Hello sir, good salām aqā, sobh- سلام آقا، صبح بخير. bekheyr.

Hello madam salām khānom, salām khānom,

Hello madam, salām khānom, خانم، بقرمایید. may I help you? befarmāid.

Thank you, a motshakeram, lotfan متَشكرَم، لَطفاً يک قَهوِه coffee with yek qahve bā shir. با شير. با شير.

Here you are, befarmāid, qahve bā ماييد، قهوه با شير coffee with shir va shekar, digar و شكر. ديگر اَمرى نيست؟ milk and sugar. amry nist?

Any other order?

No thanks; na mersi aqā, kheyli مُنه مرسى آقا، خيلى ممنون. thank you mamnun.
very much.

خواهش مى كنم. You are welcome. khāhesh mikonal. خواهش مى كنم. Goodbye. khodā-hāfez.

You're welcome khosh āmadid (i.e. nice to have khānom, khodā had you in the negahdār.

shop), goodbye.

As explained in the introduction, Persian places a lot of emphasis on self-deprecation and humility. There are endless words and phrases in Persian for saying 'please' and 'thank you' to show various degrees of appreciation. Here are a few common examples:

khāhesh-mikonam please (lit. I request from you)

بى زحمت bi-zahmat please (if it's no trouble)

lotfan please (if you'd be so kind)

In Persian as in English or French (pardon), the same word for 'sorry' or 'excuse me' can be used for apology or to seek information. The changing of the stress changes the meaning. Listen to the recording:

greetings and meeting people

ببخشید! bebakhshid excuse me (if you want to ask a question, get someone's attention, get through or to say sorry; lit. forgive me)

ببخشيد؟ bebakhshid sorry?, excuse me? (if you want someone to repeat what they have just said)

Another similar expression:

ma'zerat mi-khāham sorry (lit. I beg your pardon)

?ma'zerat mi-khāham pardon معذرت مى خواهم؟

And another:

بفرمایید befarmāid, a word that you will hear a lot in a Persian conversation, can mean 'here you are', 'please help yourself', 'what can I do for you' and 'what would you like to order' as in a restaurant, for example.

There are endless ways of saying 'thank you' in Persian. Here are some of the common and less idiomatic expressions:

متشكرم motshakram thank you (lit. I'm grateful)

mamnun thanks!

sepās-gozāram I'm grateful

merci! Thanks! (originally French but commonly used in cities in Iran)

Persian uses two different words to express welcome, as in 'welcome to the city' and as in 'you're welcome' in reply to 'thank you'. In the latter case, a number of different words and expressions can be used:

ا خوش آمدید! خوش آمدید! khosh āmadid Welcome. (to our house, for example)

خواهش مى كُنم. khāhesh-mikonam Welcome. ('you're welcome' in response to 'thank you')

You may have noticed that خواهش مى كنم khāhesh-mikonam is exactly the same as the word used for 'please' (see earlier). This is because in response to gratitude a Persian speaker should show humility and imply 'please don't even mention it'. Therefore, in Persian 'please' = 'you're welcome' = مى كنم khāhesh-mikonam.

Two more useful expressions:

امتم hatman sure, definitely

bāshad (bāshe informally) OK, all right

Exercise 2

- (a) Translate the following into Persian:
- 1 Good morning Mehri, welcome!
- 2 Yes please, tea if you don't mind.
- 3 I am sorry, Babak.
- 4 No thank you, Pari.
- 5 Safe journey, Reza and thank you.

 Don't mention it
- (b) Translate into English:

- ١ سلام آقا، بفرماييد.
- ۲ لُطفاً یک چای و یک شیرینی دانمارکی.
- ٣ ببخشيد خانم، خيلي معذرت مي خواهم.

or right at factories or now at an bank 'year out our amoraban'

Longit on the little bearing and a product of the p

- ۴ نه مرسی بابک جان.
- ٥ خواهش مي كُنَّم، خدانِگهدار.

Days of the week, months and seasons

Don't despair if you find the endless expressions of greetings and showing gratitude in Persian confusing. Let's try learning some other useful and relatively easy vocabulary: days of the week in Persian. greetings people

Days of the week

The Persian names of the days of the week are very easy to remember.

The Persian week or هفته hafte (lit. of seven) begins on Saturday, شنبه shanbe, the ancient Sabbath. Thereafter, the following days are identified by numbers one to five added to the word شنبه shanbe, with the exception of Friday, which has its Arabic name to denote the day of communal prayers i.e. jom'e.

Listen to the name of the days of the week:

Saturday (1st day of the week) شنبه shambe

Sunday (one day after Saturday) يكشنبه yekshambe

Monday (two days after...) دوشنبه doshambe

Tuesday (three days after...) سه شنبه seshambe

Wednesday (four days after...) چهارشنبه chahārshambe

Thursday (five days after...) پنجشنبه panjshambe

Friday جمعه jom'e

The weekend in Iran is Thursday and Friday; پنجشنبه و جمعه.

You will have noticed that the word شنبه shanbe is pronounced as shambe, with an 'm' instead of an 'n'. This is because when an 'n' precedes a 'b' it is pronounced as an 'm'.

Some pocket diaries and calendars carry the Persian name for Friday too which is آدینه ādine. However, the use of this noun in everyday or informal conversation and writing is very rare.

and meeting

The Persian calendar

The everyday Persian calendar is based on the solar calculation of the Muslim era. This means that although the Persian calendar goes back a very long time, the starting point of the current calendar is the morning after the flight of Mohammed, the prophet of Islam, from Mecca to Medina (in Saudi Arabia) on 16 July 622 ce. The Persian months and the start of the New Year, however, are still based on the pre-Islamic Persian traditions.

The Iranian New Year, celebrated by Persians, Afghans, Tajikis, Kurds, Parsis of the Asian subcontinent and many more, falls on the moment of the vernal equinox which coincides with 20 or 21 March. The first day of the New Year is on the first of the month of farvardin, the first month of the Iranian year. The Royal Observatory at Greenwich is a very good source of when the earth passes through the four equinoxes and the website can give you the precise time of when the Iranian New Year begins!

The months

The names of the Persian months can be quite a mouthful as they are mostly the names of Zoroastrian archangels. It is quite interesting that the Persian months correspond exactly to the signs of the zodiac. For example, if you are born on 18 June, then your birthday, according to the arrangement of the Persian months, will be on 28 khordad, which is the 28th day of the sign of Gemini.

The names of the 12 Persian months and the corresponding zodiac signs follow. They are quite a mouthful to pronounce. Listen to the name of the months and follow the script as they are being read:

فروردين	farvardin	Aries	starts 21 March
أرديبهشت	ordibehesht	Taurus	starts 21 April
خُرُداد	khordād	Gemini	starts 22 May
تير	tir	Cancer	starts 22 June
مُرداد	mordād	Leo	starts 23 July
شهريور	shahrivar	Virgo	starts 23 August

مهر	mehr	Libra	starts 23 September
آبان	ābān	Scorpio	starts 23 October
آذُر	āzar	Sagittarius	starts 22 November
دی	dey	Capricorn	starts 22 December
بَهمَن	bahman	Aquarius	starts 21 January
اسفند	esfand	Pisces	starts 20 February

The first six months of the Persian year have 31 days each, the next five have 30 days each and esfand, the last month of the year, is 29 days long.

However, every fourth year, in a leap year, known as kabise, كبيسه, esfand also is 30 days long.

All public institutions and almost all daily newspapers note the Persian, Muslim and the Christian calendars. In this way, religious festivals and important anniversaries can be marked and the business and academic community can keep up with dates used in the West.

The seasons

The four seasons in Persian are:

بُهار	bahār	spring
تابستان	tābestān	summer
پاییز	pā'eez	autumn
زمستان	zemestān	winter

Exercise 3

1 Put the following in the correct order:

- 2 What are the last two Persian months of autumn?
- What are the Persian summer months?
- 4 What Persian months correspond to 14 April, 21 July, 8 January and 30 October?
- 5 How many days are there in the Persian summer months?

In this unit you will learn how to

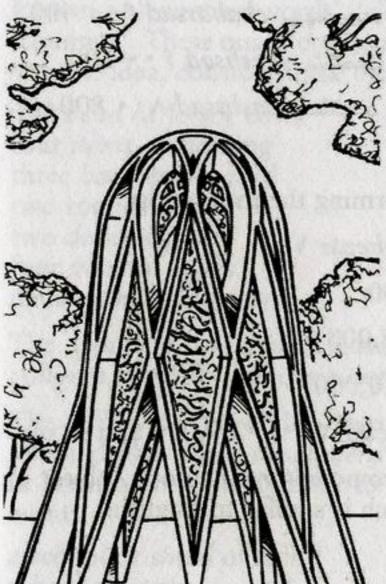
- use and write cardinal and ordinal numbers and qualifying nouns
- · form plurals
- use 'this', 'that', 'these' and 'those'

Persian numbers

Persian uses Arabic numerals and these are written numerically from left to right (in the opposite direction to the script). The following are the cardinal numbers from one to 20. Listen to how they are pronounced:

يك yek ۱ one
هنه se ۳ three
پنج panj ۵ five
پنج haft ۷ seven
هنت noh ۹ nine
هنازده yāzdah ۱۱ 11
هنازده sizdah ۱۳ 13
هنازده pānzdah ۱۵ 15
هنازده hivdah ۱۷ 17
هنازده nuzdah ۱۹ 19

رو do Y two
اله خهار ده اله خهار ده اله ده ده اله ده اله اله ده اله ده اله اله ده اله داد اله ده اله داد اله ده اله داد ا



Mausoleum of Omar Khayyam, north-east Iran

'Zero' is صفر sefr (•) in Persian.

In numbers greater than 20, the different elements follow each other as they do in English with the larger number coming first; in pronunciation they are joined together by the sound -0, meaning 'and'. So, for example, 21 (YN) is:

bist-o yek. بیست و یک

Similarly 136 (178) is:

صد و سی و شش sad-o si-yo shesh

2,574(YOVf) is:

دو هزار و پانصد و هفتاد و چهار do hezār-o pānsad-o haftād-o chahār. Bear in mind that there are irregularities and differences in the way some numbers are written and pronounced. For example, 17 and 18 are not pronounced as they are written. Seventeen (NV), is written as Abefdah, but is pronounced as hivdah; similarly, 18 (NA) is written as Abejdah but pronounced as hizhdah.

The tens of numbers have some element of the unit in them but are, on the whole, irregular.

The round units of ten, from 20 to 90, are:

bist ۲ • 20 بیست	si ۳۰ 30 سی
chehel ۴ · 40 جهل	panjāh ٥٠ 50 پنجاه
shast ۶ • 60 شصنت	haftād V • 70 هفتاد
hashtad ۸ • 80 هشتاد	navad ٩٠ 90 نود

Formation of the hundreds is almost regular, with the exception of 100, 200, 300 and 500. Again, you will spot the presence of the unit number in the two, three and five hundred. Listen to the recording as these numbers are read out:

sad ۱۰۰ 100 صد	devist ۲۰۰ 200 دویست
sisad ۳۰۰ 300 سیصد	chahārsad ۴۰۰ 400 چهارصد
pānsad ٥٠٠ 500	sheshsad ۶۰۰ 600 ششصد
haftsad V • • 700 هفتصد	hashtsad ۸۰۰ 800
nohsad ۹۰۰ 900 نهصد	

There are no irregularities in forming the thousands:

```
مزار or بکهزار میکهزار dohezār ۲۰۰۰ 2,000 دو هزار dohezār ۲۰۰۰ 2,000 بنج هزار panj-hezār ۵۰۰۰ 5,000 منج هزار dah-hezār ۱۰۰۰ 10,000 ده هزار si-yo haft-hezār ۳۷۰۰۰ 37,000 and so on
```

The cardinal numbers always come before the noun, object or the person that is counted, which is similar to English:

```
دو روز do ruz two days دو روز se ketāb three books سه کتاب bist-o panj mosāfer 25 passengers
```

Remember that quantified nouns always stay in the singular in Persian. This means that, unlike in English, nouns in Persian stay in the singular after numbers.

13

numbers

Exercise 1

- 1 Write the following numbers in Persian in digits: 6, 12, 25, 34, 7, 0, 107, 358, 819, 48, 987, 1046, 26,903.
- Write these numbers in words in Persian: forty-two, eleven, eight, thirteen, forty, sixty-nine, one hundred and fifty-one, two hundred, one thousand six hundred and twenty-five.
- 4 Translate into Persian: three books, one boy, eight cars, two men, 14 days.

Counting words or qualifying nouns

One major difference between Persian and English is that usually a singular, sometimes idiomatic, qualifying word is inserted between the number and the counted noun. Depending on the reference book you choose, these qualifiers are also known as 'counting words', 'classifiers', 'numerative words' or 'counters'. These qualifiers are rarely used in English but to give you the idea, consider these examples:

300 head of Jersey cows four items of clothing three batches of bread two rounds of golf two dozen eggs four pairs of shoes ten volumes of poetry

The words head, items, batches, rounds, dozen, pairs, and volumes typically precede a certain type of noun.

The following may also help to explain the point further, although the words *shoal*, *herd* and *flock* are 'collective nouns' in English and usually refer to large numbers of the following noun:

- a school or shoal of fish a herd of cattle
- a flock of geese

Persian has many more qualifying words than English and uses them a lot more extensively. Indeed, to an Iranian, it feels odd to hear a singular noun linked to a number without the buffer of some qualifying word.

Many South Asian languages have these classifiers that must come after cardinal numbers, to the extent that some Tibeto-Burman languages have many classifiers used for round things, metal things, animals and birds, etc. In comparison to these languages, Persian has fewer classifiers for you to learn, you'll be pleased to know!

The most common of the Persian qualifying nouns is ta, roughly translated as *item* and it can accompany almost any counted noun (but has to be more than one) with the exception of expressions of time. Units of time such as hour, minute, day, month, etc. already act as specific qualified nouns.

tā is the most widely used classifier of nouns in the spoken language:

se tā khāle three aunts (maternal)

ده تا کلاه dah tā kolāh ten hats

panj tā ketāb five books

do tā khānom two ladies

sad tā dāneshju 100 students

Note: Remember that you cannot say يک تا کتاب yek tā ketāb 'one book'. تا tā must follow numbers of two or more.

Other common qualifying words

The other most common qualifying or classifying words in Persian are:

nafar person (used for living beings) نفر

objects varying from one grape to an emerald; it is occasionally used in the colloquial for cars or houses to denote the rather small or insignificant size)

adad item, number (used mainly for small objects)

jeld volume, copy (used mainly for books)

رست dast lit. hand, can mean 'set' too (used for clothes as in 'a suit'; also 'suite' for furniture and bedding)

joft pair جفت

All units of weights and measures, such as متر metr 'metre', کیلو kilu 'kilogram', لیتر litr 'litre' are used as qualifying words. Note that the French pronunciation of these metric units is used in Persian:

15

numbers

se metr pārche-ye abrishami three metres of silk cloth

دو لیتر شیر کُم چُربی do litr shir-e kam charbi two litres of low-fat milk

yek kilo o nim gusht-e یک کیلو و نیم گوشت چرخ کرده yek kilo o nim gusht-e charkh karde one kilo and a half (lit.) minced meat

Word order of numbers and nouns

The cardinal number precedes the singular noun that it refers to. If, as is mostly the case, a qualifying or classifying noun is also used then the word order is as follows: number followed by qualifying word, followed by the noun in its singular:

چَهار نَفُر ایرانی chahār nafar irāni four Iranians (lit. four 'persons Iranian')

panj joft kafsh five pairs of shoes

yek dāne sib va do tā mowz one (seed/item) apple and two (item) bananas

ده روز تعطیل dah ruz ta'til ten days holiday or break

Ordinals

Ordinal numbers in Persian are generally formed by the addition of the suffix — -om, to the cardinal number. In English, the ordinals are made by adding -st, -nd or -rd to the first three numbers and to their compounds thereafter, e.g. 21st, 22nd, 23rd, and by adding -th to the subsequent numbers, e.g. fifth, tenth, 20th, 126th.

Although the suffix -om is added to all cardinals, the first three ordinals in Persian are slightly irregular. This is because the Arabic word of avval 'first' is much more commonly used in

Persian than the equivalent Iranian word یکم yekom.

The Iranian يكم yekom is, however, used in all the compounds, such as بيست و يكم bist-o yekom 21st or سيصد و هفتاد و يكم sisad-o haftad-o yekom 371st.

Moreover, the subsequent numbers Low do 'two' and Low se 'three' in Persian end in the short vowels 'o' and 'e'. Therefore, we have to compensate for the two short vowels (one at the end of the numeral and the other at the beginning of the suffix -om) coming together by the addition of a 'v' between the vowels 'o' and 'e':

رُوم = دُوم do + om = (not do-om but) dovom second do = do = do + om = (not se-om but) sevom third Hence the change of 'o' and 'e' to 'v'.

This formation will be carried through the compounds as well, such as:

بيستُ سوم bist-o sevom 23rd بيستُ سوم bist-o sevom 23rd بيستُ سوم chehel-o dovom 42nd چهل و دُوُم sad-o shast-o sevom 163rd

Look at the following comparison table:

Cardinal	Ordinal -
yek یک 1	(عکم yekom) اول avval much more common
2 دو do	dovvom دوم
ع سه se	sevvom mea

The ordinals after the first three, however, are very regular, as they are in English. So, in English the ordinals of numbers from four to 100,000 and beyond, with the exception of any compound number ending in one, two or three, are formed by the addition of th. In Persian, too, the ordinals of all numbers from four to the last element of number (see following table of comparison).

Cardinal	Ordinal
4 f چهار chahār	chaharom چَهَارُم
panj پنج ٥ و پنج	panjom پنجم
20 ۲ • بیست bist	bistom بیستم
21 ۲۱ بیست یک bist-o yek	bist-o yekom بیست یکم
bist-o haft بیست و هفت ۲۷ ۲۷	bist-o haftom يستُ و هَفَتُم
عند ۱۵۵ مند 100 sad	sadom صدم
1,000 مزار ۱۰۰۰ hezar	hezarom هزارم

17

numbers

and so on thoughout the number system.

Summary

1 In case of compound numbers ending with the numeral 'one' such as 231 for example, the suffix -om of yekom is attached to the end of the entire group and not avval. Therefore, the Persian equivalent of 231st, for example, will be:

- 2 The Persian ordinal of compound numbers ending in two or three will have the same irregular suffixes of -vom for 'second' and 'third', e.g. 52nd will be ينجاه و دُوُم shast-o sevvom.
- 3 Ordinal numbers behave as adverb-adjectives. As adjectives they will follow the noun as in:

hafteh-ye chahārom the fourth week مَفتهٔ چَهارُم otobus-e sevvom the third bus أَوَل film-e avval the first film

Exercise 2

- 1 Write these numbers in Persian, and say the ordinal and cardinal forms: 2, 6, 10, 11, 23, 41, 125, 94.
- 2 Translate into English:
 چَهارُم بیست و ششم شبِ سورُم هزارُم یازدهم فروردین،
 اولِ خرداد، سی و یکم

Plurals

Listen to the recording where the nouns 'book' كتاب ketāb and 'boy' بسر pesar are used, first in the singular, then quantified with numbers, in combination with 'this' and 'that' and, finally, in the plural:

book	ketāb	كتاب
two book(s)	do ketāb	دو کتاب
five book(s)	panj ketāb	پَنج کتاب
five (items of) book(s)	panj tā ketāb	پُنج تا کتاب
those (lit. that) five book(s)	ān panj ketāb	آن پنج کتاب
these (lit. this) two book(s)	in do ketāb	این دو کتاب
books	ketāb-hā	کتاب ها
these (lit. this) books	in ketāb-hā	این کتاب ها
boy	pesar	پِسُر کا یا ہے۔ اور اور
one boy	yek pesar	یک پِسَر
two boy(s)	do pesar	دو پِسَر
two (numbers of) boy(s)	do tā pesar	دو تا پِسَر
that boy	ān pesar	آن پِسَر
those (lit. that) boys	ān pesar-hā	آن پِسَرها
these (lit. this) two boy(s)	in do pesar	این دو پِسَر

Forming the plural

There are several ways of making plurals in Persian.

1 The most common way is by adding a hā to the end of a noun. This is almost the equivalent of adding an 's' to English nouns to form the plural and is most commonly used with non-living, inanimate things:

2 By adding the plural ending نا ق. However, the plural ending is only ever used for animate beings (including the nouns for growing things such as tree or herb) or nouns and adjectives referring to living things and is more commonly found in the written language. Wherever possible, the ending ان is joined to the word:

19

plural ending ان Other uses of an

1 In the written language, particularly in a literary text, the plural ending i $\bar{a}n$ can also be used for animals:

2 When adjectives such as 'good', 'young', 'great', 'bad' etc. are used in written, literary language to refer to a group of people such as 'the good' or 'the young' the plural ending is used:

Note: These adjectives in the plural never follow nouns; rather they are used as nouns.

In the examples just given, when the adjectives qualifying human beings end in the two long vowels \bar{a} and u, the plural ending becomes a u, instead of u.

دانا $d\bar{a}n\bar{a}$ wise \to دانا $d\bar{a}n\bar{a}y\bar{a}n$ wise ones, the wise $n\bar{a}bin\bar{a}$ blind \to نابینا $n\bar{a}bin\bar{a}y\bar{a}n$ blind ones, the blind

سُخُنگویان → sokhangu spokesperson, speaker سُخُنگویان خokhanguyān the speakers

mājerāju adventurer → ماجِراجويان mājerājuyān the adventurers

Similarly, when nouns or adjectives attributable to living things end in the short vowel e, indicated by the sign 4 the plural ending changes to 3 a a and the final vowel sign of a is dropped:

بَچه bache child, childish → بَچگان bachegān children or childish ones

گرسنه gorosne hungry → گرسنگان و gorosnegān the hungry ones گرسنه darande savage → دَرندکان darandegān the savage ones درندو setāre star → ستارگان setāregān the stars

Plural of units of time and place

The plural of units of time and adverbs of place are always made with $\triangle h\bar{a}$.

Time

روزها → روزها ruzhā days بنه shab night → شبها shabhā nights شبه shabhā nights مفته ها مفته ها هفته هاه هفته هاه hafte weeks هفته مأه هاه هاه هاه māh-hā months سالها sālhā years سافه عنه sā'athā hours

Place

خشورها → کشورها خده keshvarhā countries کشورها خود keshvar country کشورها خود keshvarhā countries خنگل jangalhā forests جنگلها خود jangalhā forests شهر shahr city, town خنگلها خود shahrhā cities, towns

21

S

Other plurals

In addition to the methods just explained, other ways of forming the plural exist in Persian that deal almost exclusively with forming the plurals of Arabic words in Persian. These range from 'feminine plurals' to 'duals' and the broken plurals.

It is not necessary at this stage in the book to spend time on formation of these plurals.

Note: In Persian, a quantified noun, i.e. a noun accompanied by a number, never takes the plural. This means that, for example, the moment you specify how many books, apples or tourists you are referring to, you use the singular noun. Remember, numbers are always followed by nouns in the singular, not in the plural.

one book یک کتاب ها books کتاب ها two books دو کتاب lit. two book and not دو کتاب هزار کتاب ها thousand books هزار کتاب

Exercise 3

1 Put the following words into the plural:

2 Translate the following plurals into Persian: cities, boys, flowers, cats, women, days, summers, pens, trains, the young, the wise, three sisters, ten birds, two hours.

Moving a step further

All the lone words and single phrases of greeting and the names of the days of the week, numbers and plurals should have built up a good store of vocabulary for you. So now it is time to start forming proper sentences, starting with the very simple and gradually working towards understanding and using Persian in a more realistic manner.

Before we can go on, however, we need to look at the most common terminology that is used to describe grammar and rules of forming verbs, tenses and so on. Luckily the rules of Persian grammar are relatively logical and quite simple and, compared to many other languages spoken in the Middle East, can be learned rather effortlessly. Familiarizing yourself with these technical terms and 'jargons' will therefore make it easier to follow the subsequent units.

Grammatical glossaries and meanings

Syntax and word order

First of all, it is important to note that the simple and normal word order in Persian is:

Subject – object – verb i.e. I – cat – saw

In English, of course, the word order is:

Subject – verb – object I saw (the) cat

Gradually, we will be able to introduce other elements into the sentence and will end up with the following:

Subject – adverb of time – adverb of manner – direct object – indirect object – adverb of place – verb.

But, for the time being, let us focus on the fundamental components of the sentence.

Subject

(I in the example sentence.) The subject is the doer or the agent or performer of the action in the sentence.

Object

(cat in the example sentence.) The object is a noun or equivalent or a string of words forming a clause, towards which the action of the verb is directed or on whom the action is performed.

Verb

(saw in the example sentence.) The verb is a word that expresses an action, a state or feeling or what is becoming of, or happening to, someone or something.

I have to tell you that these rules are not always followed in the spoken language and you may often hear native speakers of Persian using the subject-verb-object order in the sentences, which would bring it closer to the English sentence structure.

This word order makes it harder to follow what's going on, because the listener has to wait until the speaker gets to the end of the sentence before he can work out what action is being discussed!

Just remember that in this book the verb in our Persian sentences is the *final component* in the sentence, however, in different situations the word order may be moved around in the sentence. There is not much point in going into details of all the ways the word order rules can be broken as this is usually done in archaic prose, in the colloquial language or in stylized texts such as film scripts or novels.

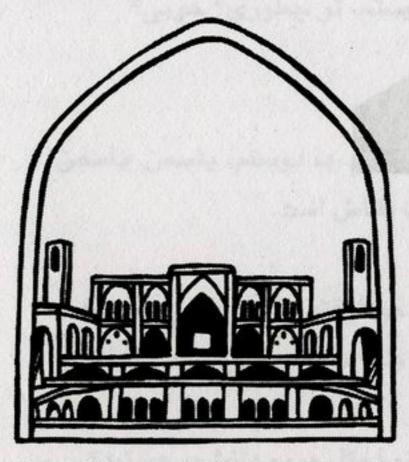
For a sentence with the verb 'to be', that is 'am, are, is, were, was', the order is: subject – predicate – 'to be' (known as the copula). In such sentences, the subject can be a noun, a phrase or a pronoun, and in more advanced language, the subject of a sentence can be an infinitive for example.

The word order, of course, becomes more complex as we learn more and more about the language. A slightly more advanced sentence will have other components such as question words (interrogatives), adverbs and direct as well as indirect objects and then the sentences can become even more complex as we look at relative clauses and conditional sentences for example. The objective of this book, however, is to teach you the basics of the grammar and, hopefully, you will be able to built on this functional knowledge and take it further.

I have tried to explain the meaning of technical terms or grammatical jargons that I have used in the following units, as it is impossible to avoid them totally. Besides you only ever need to learn these words once and they will always come handy when you try to learn another new language.

Exercise 1

What form of greetings would you use if you were asked to say: 'good morning', 'good afternoon, Maryam', 'thank you very much, Reza', 'goodbye, Ali, safe journey', 'good night, ladies and gentlemen'?

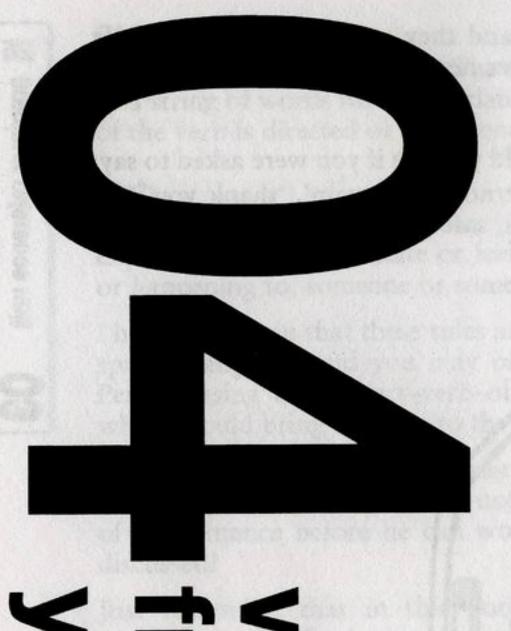


Aqa Bozorg Mosque and Madrasah Complex, Kashan

ස

25

grammar reference unit



In this unit you will learn how to

- · say where you are from
- · ask how someone is
- · give basic personal information
- say your nationality and occupation

Dialogue

Listen to Maryam (M) and Babak (B) greeting each other and enquiring after each other's health. Maryam then introduces a new friend, Yasaman (Y) to Babak. (Note the use of plural verb endings to show respect and formality.)

ب	مريم جان، سلام!
م	به! بابک جان، سلام، صبح بخیر. چطوری؟
ب	مرسی، قُربانت، بد نیستم، تو چطوری؟ خوبی؟
م	خیلی خویم، مرسی.
ب	مريم جان تُنها هستى؟
م	نه، بابک، با دوستم هستم. با دوستم، یاسمن. یاسم
	این بابک است. بابک نقاش است.
s	سلام. المان المساور
ب	سلام، ياسمن خانم. خوشوقتم. شما ايراني هستيد؟

ثلِ مريم دانشجو هستيد؟	من شیرازی هستم. شما م	ب
ن عكاس هستم.	نه، من دانشجو نیستم، مر	s
سب منزل هستی؟	به! به! چه خوب! مريم، اه	ب
نذل هستیم	بله من و پاسمن امشت ما	

کجا هستید؟

بله من ایرانی هستم ولی مادرم روس است. شما اهل

В	maryam jān, salām!
M	bah! bābak jān, salām, sobh-bekheyr. chetori?
В	mersi, qorbānat, bad nistam, to chetori? khubi?
M	kheyli khubam, mersi.
В	maryam jān tanhā hasti?
М	na, bābak, bā dustam hastam. bā dustam, yāsaman. yāsaman in bābak ast. bābak naqqāsh ast.
Y	salām.
В	salām yāsaman khānom. khoshvaqtam. shomā irāni hastid?
Y	bale, man irāni hastam, vali mādaram rus ast. shomā ahl-e kojā hastid?

В	man shirāzi hastam. shomā mesl-e maryam dāneshju hastid?
Y	na, man dāneshju nistam, man 'akkās hastam.
В	bah! bah! che khub! maryam, emshab manzel hasti?
M	bale, man o yāsaman emshab manzel hastim.
В	Hi, (dear) Maryam!
M	Wow! Hi (dear) Babak, good morning. How are you?
В	Thanks, kind of you to ask (lit. I am your sacrifice). (I am) not bad, how are you? Are you well?
M	(I am) very well, thank you.
В	Maryam (dear), are you alone?
М	No, Babak, I am with my friend. With my friend Yasaman. Yasaman, this is Babak. Babak is (a) painter.
Y	Hello.
В	Hello, (miss) Yasaman. Pleased to meet you. Are you (pl.) Iranian?
Y	Yes, I am Iranian, but my mother is Russian. Where are you (pl.) from?
В	I am from Shiraz (lit. I am Shirazi). Are you a student like Maryam?
Y	No, I am not (a) student, I am (a) photographer.
В	Wow! Great! Maryam, are you at home tonight?
M	Yes, Yasaman and I are at home tonight.

chetor?	how?	چطور؟
i	short, contracted form of	S
	you (sing.) are, i.e. you're	
tanhā	alone	تُنها
dust	friend	دوست
-am	[suffix] my, دوستُم my friend	م
naqqāsh	painter	نَقاش
khoshvaqt	fortunate, happy	خوشوقت
-am	short, contracted form of I am,	۴
	i.e. I'm	
khoshvaqtam	I'm happy	خوشوقتم

rus	Russian	روس
shomā	you (pl.)	شُما
ahl	native of, (also to have a liking for s.t.)	اُهل
kojā	question word where?	كُجا
mesl	like, similar to	مثِل
dāneshju	student	دانِشجو
nistam	negative of to be, i.e. I am not	نيستَم
'akkās	photographer	عُکاس
bah! bah!	sign of exclamation meaning wonderful, lovely	اهم اهم
manzel	home, house	مُنزل

Present tense of 'to be'

The dialogue shows you the simple forms of the present tense of the verb 'to be' as in 'I am', 'you are', 'we are', etc.

The Persian verb 'to be' can be expressed in two ways: in the full form or condensed. In English, you can say either 'I am a student' or 'I'm a student'. In other words, there is a full, standalone form of the verb, like 'I am' and there is an abbreviated, contracted form like 'I'm'.

The full form of the verb 'to be' in Persian expresses a slightly different state from its English equivalent. It means more 'to exist' or 'there is' than 'to be', while the English variation is really a matter of style: formal or colloquial.

Before we go on any further and look at the Persian form of 'to be' it is important for you to note that the Persian verbs 'to be' and 'to have' are totally irregular. This means that they have rules of their own and do not fit wholly in the more or less regular system of verb conjugation that applies to other Persian verbs. Having said that, they are very easy to learn and getting to grips with them early on will make some future grammatical explanations a lot simpler to follow.

Full forms of 'to be' in the present tense

The six cases of the full present tense of the verb to be are shown in the following table.

Singular	Plural
hastam I am	hastim we are
hasti you are هُستى	hastid you are
hast s/he, it, this, that is	hastand they, these, those are

The use of the full form implies either formality or the sense that one exists in the state expressed. For example: من ايرانى هستم irāni hastam 'I am Iranian' is used either in a formal setting or means that the speaker wishes to put some stress on the fact that he or she exists as an Iranian. Similarly, انها خسته هستند anhā khaste hastand 'they are tired' means that they are in an exhausted state, putting more stress on the fact that they are tired.

The distinction is not so important in colloquial, spoken Persian.

Attached, contracted forms of 'to be' in the present tense

As already mentioned, the verb 'to be' can also appear as an attached ending, not dissimilar to 'you're nice' as opposed to 'you are nice'. The present tense of the verb 'to be', in its attached form, consists simply of six personal endings or suffixes. If you look at the full form, you will see that the short suffixes are just the endings of the full form. These abbreviated suffixes are then fixed onto the preceding word in the sentence. Later on in the book, when we look more closely at forming Persian verbs, these same endings, with one exception, will be used as the compulsory suffixes of all verbs.

The attached forms of 'to be' are found in the following table:

Singular	Plural
-am I am	im we are- يم
ن -i you are	id you are- ید
ast he, she, it is- ست	and they, these are ند

The following table illustrates how the endings correspond to the full form of the verb and to the personal pronouns.

31

where are you from? what do you do?

Singular	Plural
am م \leftrightarrow هستم I 🕂 من	are يم ↔ هستيم we → ما
are ی ↔ هَستی (sing.) نُو	are ید حمد مُستید (pl.) wou خشما
is ست ↔ هست he, she, it → او	are ند ↔ هستند they نیشان

The full, complete example of the verb 'to be well', used in the dialogue in this unit, is as follows:

خوب + م خويَم I am well خوب + ى خويى you are well خوب + ست خويست he/she/it is well فوب + ست خويست we are well (ما) خوب + يم ما خوييم you (pl.) are well (شُما) خوب + يد شما خوييد they are well)

Combination or clash of vowels

As we mentioned earlier in this book, Persian does not allow for a long and a short vowel to come together, this means, for example, that the sound e cannot follow the sound a or e. This combination of vowels, of course, does not happen in words, however, whenever there is a need to join a short and a long vowel together, as we occasionally have to do to form verbs, we must insert a buffer between the two vowels to ensure that both vowels can be pronounced easily.

There are clear rules for doing this. When short forms of the verb 'to be' are joined to words ending in -e (4, 6), such as bache, and -i (3), an alef is used as a buffer and inserted between the two vowels:

Singular	Plural
ا am a child بچه اَم	we are children بچه ایم
you (sing.) are a child بچه ای	you (pl.) are children بچه اید
he, she is a child بچه اَست	بچه اَند they are children

Or using خسته khaste, meaning 'tired' as an example:

I am tired خسته ایم we are tired بایم we are tired بایم کوسته ایم you (sing.) are tired خسته ای you (pl.) are tired خسته اید he, she, it is tired خسته است they are tired خسته اند they are tired

How about a word ending with the long vowel نايرانى i, e.g. ايرانى irāni, 'Iranian'?:

SingularPluralI am Iranian ایرانی ایم we are Iranian you (sing.) are Iranian you (pl.) are Iranian lucible.you (pl.) are Iranian you (pl.) are Iranian lucible.ایرانی اید / ایرانیید he, she, it is Iranian lucible.they are Iranian lucible.ایرانی اند / ایرانیست ایرانی است / ایرانیست

And a word ending in long vowel و u, like خوشرو khoshru, 'cheerful':

Singular	Plural
خوشرویکم I am cheerful	we are cheerful خوشروییم
you (sing.) are cheerful	you (pl.) are cheerful
خوشرویی	خوشروييد
he, she, it is cheerful	خوشرویند they are cheerful
خوشروست	

Negative form of the present tense of 'to be'

The negative of the present tense of the verb 'to be' is formed by adding the personal subject endings to the verb 'is nist. There are no short forms for the negative verb of 'to be'.

Singular	Plural
I am not نیستَم	we are not نیستیم
you (sing.) are not نیستی	you (pl.) are not نیستید
he, she, it is not نیست	they are not نیستَند

Other examples:

خوبيم I am (a) teacher مُعُلِمَم he are well معُلِمَم I am (a) teacher معُلِمَم he is (a) boy 33

Since Persian verb forms always tell you who the subject or the 'doer' of the verb is, the additional use of personal pronouns is not always necessary; however, their use emphasizes the person of the subject. For example:

مَن چینی نیستَم، ژاپنی هستم. I am not Chinese, I am Japanese

f Asking questions in Persian

Persian has the equivalent of all the English question words such as 'why', 'where', 'who' etc. and some more; however, one of the easiest ways to form a question is to say something and make it sound like a question by raising your intonation. This is very common in spoken Persian, especially in sentences with 'to be'. Listen to the recording and you'll get a better idea of the change of tone in question sentences.

They are Iranian. ān-hā irāni hastand. آنها) ايرانى هستند. They are Iranian? (as opposed to Are they Iranian?) ān-hā irāni hastand? (آنها) ايرانى هستند؟

Tehran is expensive. tehrān gerān ast. تهران گران است. Tehran is expensive? (as opposed to Is Tehran expensive?) tehrān gerān ast? تهران گران است؟

Exercise 1

Rewrite the following sentences using the short forms of the verb 'to be', then translate them into English:

این قالیچه گران است.

- ۲ آن اُتاق خیلی بزرگ نیست ولی تمیز اَست.
 - ۳ آنها در اُتوبوس هستند.
 - أن دُخترها خواننده نیستند.
 - ۵ شُما با مریم دوست هستید؟

Exercise 2

Translate these sentences into Persian:

- 1 This peach is delicious.
- 2 Maryam is a painter.
- 3 You (pl.) are tired.
- 4 I am young.
- 5 We are in Tehran.

Exercise 3

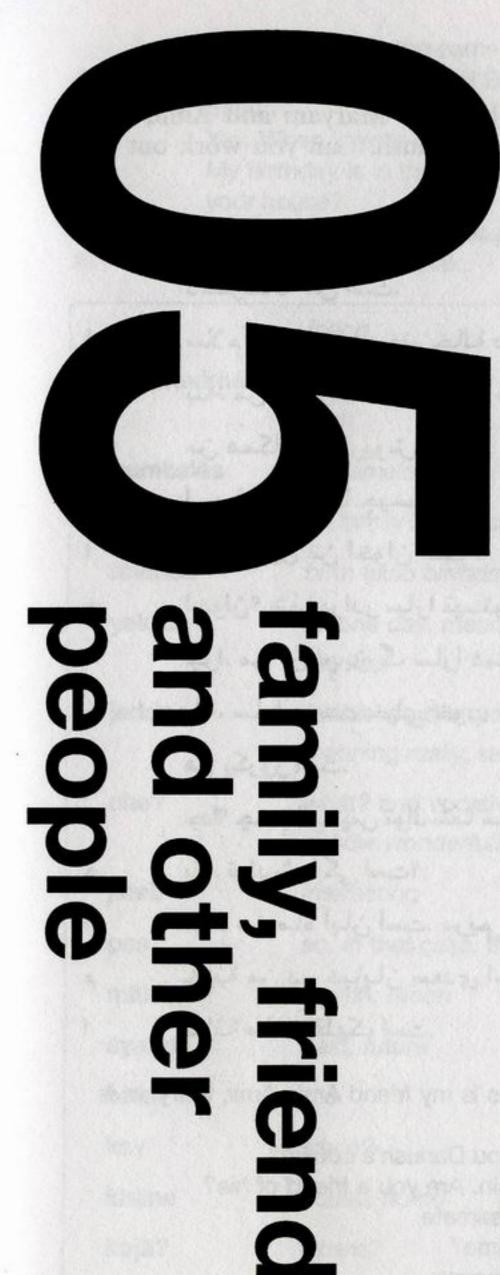
Give full negative answers to the following questions:

- ۱ آن پسر اسکاتلندی است؟
- ۲ شما با ایر ج دوست هستید؟
 - ٣ من ورزشكار هستم؟
 - ۴ آنها خیلی خسته اُند؟
 - ٥ شما نقاشيد؟

Exercise 4

Rewrite the dialogue, using the short forms of the verb 'to be' wherever appropriate.

Rewrite the rolldwing, sentences using the whost toxics of the



In this unit you will learn how to

- give more personal information using pronouns
- describe characteristics using adjectives
- describe family relationships and associations

Dialogue

Listen to the conversation between Maryam and Amir, who have just been introduced by Dariush. Can you work out the relationships?

مريم جان، اين دوستِ من اُمير است. امير، مريم	د
دخترخالهٔ من است.	

سلام مريم. شما دختر خالة داريوش هستيد؟

م بله، من دخترخالهٔ او هستم. شما دوستِ داريوش هستيد؟

أ من همكلاس داريوش هستم.

م اِسمِ فاميلِ شما چيست؟

اً إسم فاميل من أخُوان است .

اخوان؟ شما برادر سارا نیستید؟

چرا، من برادر بزرگ سارا هستم. سارا دوست شماست؟

م بله، سارا دوستِ خیلی خوبِ من است و تولدِ من و سارا

هم يكروز است.

جِداً؟ چه جالب! پس تولدِ شما ماهِ آینده است؟

م بله. تولد شما کی است؟

اً تولدِ من ماهِ آبان است. مريم خانهٔ تو كجاست؟

م خانهٔ من در خیابانِ سعدی است. خانهٔ تو کجاست؟ اَ خانهٔ ما در قُلهک است.

Maryam (dear), this is my friend Amir. Amir, Maryam is my cousin.

A Hi, Maryam. Are you Dariush's cousin?

M Yes, I am his cousin. Are you a friend of his?

A I am Dariush's classmate.

M What's your surname?

A My surname is Akhavan.M Akhavan? Are you not Sara's brother?

A Yes, I am Sara's older brother. Is Sara your friend?

M Yes, Sara is my very good friend and Sara and my

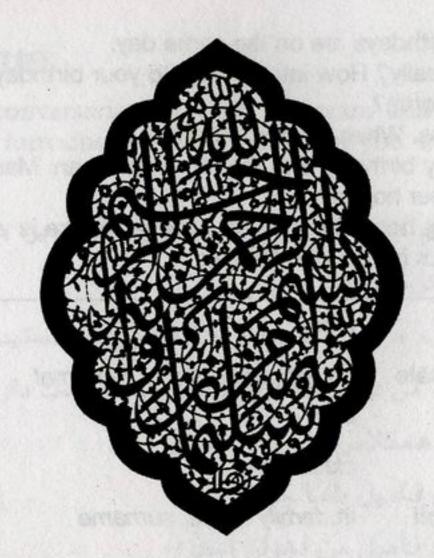
birthdays are on the same day.
Really? How interesting! So your birthday is next month?
Yes. When is your birthday?
My birthday is in the month of Aban. Maryam, where is your house?

My house is on Sa'di Avenue. Where is your house?

Our house is in Qolhak.

M

dust	friend	دوست
dokhtarkhāle	cousin, daughter of maternal	دخترخال
hamkelās	classmate	هُمكِلاس
esm-e fāmil	lit. family name, surname	همكلاس اِسم فاميا
tavalod	birth (also birthday)	تُولُد
yekruz	lit. one day, meaning the same day too	يكروز
jeddan	Arabic word structure as adverb meaning really, seriously	جِداً
che?	what? and vocative exclamation as in how wonderful!	چه
jāleb	interesting	جالب
pas	so, in that case, therefore	پُس
māh	month; moon	ماه
āyande	next, future	آيندِه
bale	yes	بلّه
kay	when?	کِی؟
khāne	house, home	خانه
kojā?	where?	کُجا؟ دُر
dar	in, at, inside	دُر
khiyābān	street, avenue	خيابان



Steel door panel, Isfahan, 17th century

Personal pronouns

Singular		Plural
1st	مَن man I	mā we
2nd	to you تُو	shomā you شما
3rd	u he, she, it او	قيا/ايشان ānhā they

Persian has an honorific system of pronouns. Something similar happens in French, when you have to choose between 'tu' and 'vous' when addressing a person. In general, all the plural pronouns can be used to indicate formality and respect. For example, in an Iranian primary classroom, children rarely refer to themselves in the first person singular but refer to themselves as 'we' in order to show humility and respect towards the teacher. Similarly, the third person plural 'they' can be used to refer to a singular third party in a formal setting and to show respect. (Incidentally, be warned that the formal pronouns can also be used to show disdain and contempt!) As you can see, there are two second person pronouns:

to, is used at times of great intimacy to address close friends, loved ones and children

shomā, as well as its function as the second person plural pronoun, is used to address a singular person to observe formality and to indicate respect between strangers and elders as well as in the peer groups.

Exercise 1

How would you address or refer to the following in Persian? Use the appropriate pronoun.

- 1 Your new, elderly neighbour.
- 2 Your closest friend.
- 3 The bank manager.
- 4 Your cousin's small child.
- 5 The immigration officer.

How to describe something or someone?: linking nouns, adjectives and pronouns

Before being able to use the personal pronouns in even a simple or meaningful construction, such as 'my name', 'your brother' or 'his car', and then giving more information such as 'your older brother' or 'his blue car', we must learn one of the most fundamental characteristics of the Persian language.

Both in written and in spoken Persian, we must show an agreement and correspondence between nouns, pronouns, adjectives and prepositions. We must be able to demonstrate possession or close association.

Look at the following English construction: 'my fast, beautiful, expensive, thoroughbred, young horse'. In this example, there is no sign in the script or any indication when spoken, that joins the adjectives ('young, fast, beautiful', etc.) to one another or ultimately to the possessor ('my') and from there onto the noun ('horse').

The native speaker of English knows, and the learner will soon understand, that these adjectives tell us something about the noun ('horse') they describe and that the whole 'package' belongs to a first person speaker, demonstrated by 'my'.

In Persian, however, a noun, the adjectives that describe it and the owner that possesses the whole thing, must be treated as pearls strung together by a thread that runs through them. In g family, friends and other people

20

other words, a sound or a written sign must hold the whole construction together. This, at times, invisible chord or link, is known as the *ezafe*, literally meaning 'addition'. It sounds like the vowel 'e', as in 'end' or 'ye' as in 'yes'. The complete rules for writing it will be given a little further on in this unit, but first let us see how the adjective works in Persian.

Adjectives

Adjectives in Persian are remarkably similar to adjectives in English with one exception. In Persian, an adjective follows the noun it qualifies or describes, instead of preceding it, as is the case in English. In Persian this combination of a noun and its adjective (or adjectives) is held together by the *ezafe*, a vowel that connects the two.

For example, 'blue pencil' is مداد آبى medād-e ābi in Persian, as if you were saying: 'pencil-e-blue'.

Here is a trick to help you work out the correct Persian order of nouns and adjectives. Write down your English noun and the adjective that describes it. Write the Persian equivalent of each English word underneath it and then read the Persian words in the natural direction of the language, that is from right to left. This should give you the correct order of nouns and adjectives as spoken or read in Persian. You should be able to see that the adjective is following the noun it describes:

So, adjectives in Persian always follow the noun they qualify or describe and are joined to it by the vowel e or ye if the noun ends in a long vowel such as \bar{a} $\bar{1}$ or u.

A group, i.e. noun + attributive adjective, may in its turn be qualified by another adjective:

When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun in the same way, they are co-ordinated:

41

family, friends and other people

05

Writing rules for the ezafe link between noun-adjective, noun-pronoun, noun-noun

There are three ways of 'writing down' this basically vocal 'link' in the script, by adding either an _, or or to the word, which is then followed by an adjective or a possessor.

Remember, the first two signs of _ and * are only ever used in the script either to help a beginner or to avoid ambiguity.

The following table sets out the rules for the use of the ezafe to create a link between the noun, adjective and pronoun or another noun:

- 1 If the word ends in a consonant (e.g. ج، ک، چ.) always use _ pronounced e as in egg.
- 2 If the word ends in a short final vowel (e.g. silent h, 4) always use pronounced ye as in yesterday.
- 3 If the word ends in the long vowels u or \bar{a} (1.9) always use g pronounced g as in yesterday.

The third option must always be used if words ending with long vowels l or g, such as g g foot, or g g g hair are then linked to an adjective, a pronoun or another noun.

Reminder: The short final vowel is denoted by the silent h, in words like خانه khāne 'house' or بچه bache 'child'.

D Use of pronouns 'me', 'you' etc.

In English, when you identify an object such as a book as yours, you simply say 'my book'. In Persian, the 'book' کتاب ketāb and 'my' من man must not only be written together, they must also be linked in speech, so much so that the final 'b', of the is linked to the initial 'm', من of من, with the help of the ezafe, which will either sound like e as in 'egg', or a ye as in 'yesterday'.

Try reading the following examples, paying full attention to the vocalization, but first listen to the individual words being read out without their being linked:

کتاب من man me, mine, my

نم من ketāb-e man my book (lit. book of me)

عداب من sib apple

نیرین shirin sweet

نسیس sib-e shirin sweet apple

بیب شیرین sib-e shirin sweet apple

من sib-e shirin-e man my sweet apple ميب شيرين من dust-e Ali Ali's friend

على dust-e khub-e Ali Ali's good friend دوست خوب على dust-e khub-e barādar-e Ali Ali's brother's good friend (lit. good friend of Ali's brother)

خانه khāne house بزرگ bozorg big, large to you (sing.)

خانهٔ تو khāne-ye to your (sing.) house خانهٔ تو khāne-ye bozorg-e to your (sing.) big house خانهٔ بُزُرگِ تو ketāb-e farsi Persian book

من ketāb-e farsi-ye man my Persian book سی من mu hair

siyāh black سیاه

موى سياه mu-ye siyāh black hair

موى سياهِ على mu-ye siyāh-e Ali Ali's black hair

Note that 'hair' mu ends in a long u vowel and therefore the ezafe link to the adjective must be a ye. Similarly, 'house' khāne ends in a short, final vowel (using the letter h to represent this

vowel) and must be linked to the adjective with a ye, indicated by the diacritic .

43

family, friends and other people

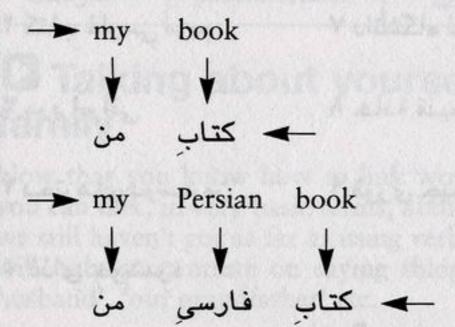
S

Summary

- 1 In Persian, unlike in English, adjectives always follow the noun: that means you will have to say 'apple sweet', 'book big', 'weather good', 'woman noble'.
- 2 Similarly, the possessor always comes after the possessed thing, or at the end of the package if the possessed comes with adjectives; that means we have to say 'book my' or 'book Persian my'.

Short cut

Remember that in translating a simple English noun-adjective expression, you can write out the Persian translation of each word directly underneath the corresponding English words and then read the end result from right to left; this should give you the translation of your English phrase:

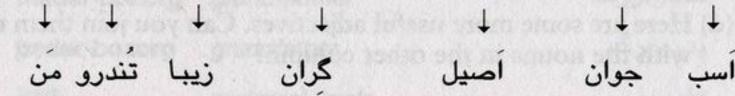


And, of course, the reverse will also work. If you want to translate the Persian into English you can just read the Persian from left to right!

Let's return to the original construction now (page 39) and see if we can work out how to say 'my fast, beautiful, expensive, thoroughbred, young horse' in Persian:

From left to right:

→ my fast beautiful expensive thoroughbred young horse Now, write the Persian for each word underneath the English:



Then, choose the appropriate ezafe ending for each noun or

adjective by looking at the last letter. Is it a consonant, a long or a short vowel?

Now read the linked words from right to left and, bingo!, you should get:

اسبِ جوانِ اصيلِ گرانِ زيبای تندروی من

(This exaggerated construction was made up to illustrate the function of the *ezafe*. In practice very long descriptive constructions such as these are broken into smaller units and linked together with 'and'.)

Exercise 2

(a) Read the following constructions and then and translate them into English:

۱ باغِ بزرگ	۴ شبِ تاریکِ سرد
۲ کتابِ فارسیِ مریم	۷ دانشگاهِ لَندَن
۳ مردِ ایرانی	٨ خانهٔ قديمي
۴ دخترهای دوستِ مَن	٩ قوري چيني خواهر مهربان بابک
٥ غذاء خوشمَ ١	

(b) Translate the following into Persian:

Sweet grapes.
 Maryam's Russian friend.
 Mr. Ahmadi's car.
 Large, nice room.
 Handmade, Kashan carpets.
 Old, historic city.
 Cold, sunny day.
 Her neighbour.
 My green umbrella.
 Old, kind men.

(c) Translate the following passage into Persian:
My name is Ali. I am Iranian. I am a student in Tehran. This is
my sister Maryam. Maryam's birthday is in December. Her
friend's brother is my classmate. His name is Mehrdad.
Mehrdad's hair is brown. His house is in Afshar Avenue.

(d) Here are some more useful adjectives. Can you join them up with the nouns in the other column?

Adjective	Translation	Noun	Translation
ارزان	cheap	خانه	house
سیاه	black	غذا	food, dish
گرم	warm	ميوه	fruit
گران	expensive	صندلی	chair
سُرد	cold	هوا	weather, air
طلایی	golden	چشم	eyes
خوشمزه	tasty	مو	hair
بدمزه	horrid tasting	گریه	cat
راحت	comfortable	تابستان	summer
ناراحت	uncomfortable	كَفش	shoe

☐ Talking about yourself and your family

Now that you know how to link words that belong together, you can talk, in very basic terms, about your family. Remember we still haven't got as far as using verbs extensively, so here we will only concentrate on saying things like 'my sister', 'your husband', 'our grandfather' etc.

In order to do this you need to use the relevant personal pronoun chosen from the six given in the table earlier in the unit and link it to the appropriate member of the family. This vocabulary list should help.

mādar	mother	مادر
pedar	father	پِدَر
khāhar	sister	خواهر
barādar	brother	بَرادُر
mādar-bozorg	grandmother	مادریزُرگ
pedar-bozorg	grandfather	پِدَرِیزُرگ
dāʻi	maternal uncle	دایی

'amu	paternal uncle	عمو
khāle	maternal aunt	خالِه طالِه
'ame	paternal aunt	عَمِه
zan – hamsar khānom	– wife	زن - (همسر) - خانم
showhar – hamsar	husband	شوهر - (همسر)
hamsar	spouse	هُمسُر
pesar	son/boy	پسر
dokhtar	daughter/girl	دُختُر

The terms for eight sets of cousins (e.g. son/daughter of maternal aunt):

سادر نن / مادر شوهر mādar-zan / mādar-showhar مادرنن / مادر شوهر pedar-zan / pedar-showhar

So, how would you say 'my brother', 'your (sing.) husband', 'their mother', 'our sister', 'my (daughter of maternal aunt) cousin' and 'his/her uncle's grandmother'?

Here are the answers:

بُرادُر مَن	barādar-e man
شوهر تو	showhar-e tow
مادُر آنها	mādar-e ānhā
خواهُر ما	khāhar-e mā
دُختر خالة من	dokhtar-khāle-ye man
ما دربُزُرگِ عموی او	mādar-bozorg-e 'amu-ye u

Exercise 3

Translate into Persian:

- 1 My grandmother is 92 years old. (use ساله after number for 'years old')
- 2 She is my cousin. (daughter of my mother's sister)
- 3 My uncle (paternal) is your father's friend.
- 4 Our brother is a doctor.
- 5 Their sister-in-law (sister of husband) and our sister are in London today.

C 'Suffixed' or 'attached' possessive endings

Listen to the dialogue between Amir and Maryam and see if you can spot a different way of expressing possession, without the use of pronouns:

م اَمیر، کیفَم کُجاست؟

ا كيفت؟

S

م بله، كيف سياهم.

اَ آها، کیف سیاهت. اینجاست. مریم، رضا و خواهرش
 کحا هستند؟

م آنها پیشِ همسایه مان هستند، ولی ماشینِشان بیرون در خیابان است.

M Amir, where is my bag?

A Your bag?

M Yes, my black bag.

A Ah, your black bag. It's here. Maryam, where are Reza and his sister?

M They are at our neighbour's, but their car is outside in the street.

kif	bag	كيف
-am	my	6 —
kifam	my bag	كيفَم
kojā	where?	كُجا

-st	short form is	,
kojāst	where is?	كجاست
siyāh	black	سیاه
siyāham	my black	سياهم
āhā!	ah!, I see	آها
-at	your	
siyāhat	your black	سياهَت
dar	in, at	در
khāhar	sister	خواهر
-ash	his, hers	_ ش
khāharash	his sister	خواهرش
pish-e	at	پیشِ
hamsāye	neighbour	هُمسایه
-emān	our	-مان
hamsāye-mān	our neighbour	هُمسایه
māshin	car	ماشين
-eshān	their	_شان
māshineshān	their car	ماشينشان
birun	outside	بيرون
khiyābān	street	خيابان

In the dialogue, Maryam, looking for her bag, did not say: كيف من kif-e man 'my bag' but, instead, said كيف kifam which is another way of saying exactly the same thing: 'my bag'. Rather than using the pronoun من man, Maryam used an attached possessive ending. Similarly, when she identified the colour of her bag she did not say: كيف سياه من kif-e siyāh-e man but كيف سياه من kif-e siyāham meaning 'my black bag'.

No sooner have you got used to the function of the personal pronouns 'I' at c. in expressions to show possession, as in 'my friend' or 'your car', than it's time to learn another way of expressing the same thing, this time by using attached pronoun substitutes. This could be a new concept for you as there is no exact equivalent in English. The proper name for the attached pronoun is a 'suffixed possessive pronoun' which means you attach or fix it to the end of the noun.

Writing rules

The attached possessive personal pronouns are shown on the left in the following table, while the full, subject pronouns are listed on the right.

	Attached possessive pronouns		Stand-alone subject prono		uns
	plural	singular	plural	singular	
1	_مان our	my	we ما	مَن I	1
2	بتان your	your	wou شُما	you تُو	۲
3	_شان their	his, hers ـــُـش	شان/آنها they	او he, she ای	٣

The possessive suffixes are attached directly to words ending in consonants and the long vowel ω :

However, a buffer needs to be inserted between words ending with the final, short vowel e, \rightarrow , and the singular attached possessives (\rightarrow). The buffer is the 'alef' 1:

49

family, friends and other people

The plural attached pronouns, however, do not need to be separated from the final short vowels by a buffer:

Following I and vowels a (i.e. ye) buffer is inserted between the noun and the attached possessive suffixes:

Exercise 4

Translate the following possessive constructions using both the stand-alone and the attached pronouns:

1	my	brother	

6 his friend

2 their horse

7 your (sing.) book

3 our house

8 my kind (paternal) uncle

4 your (pl.) black dog5 their umbrella

9 her grandmother10 our city

Exercise 5

Translate into English:

۱۴ سیبهای سَبِز تُرش	۱ مردگرسنیه (hungry)
۱۵ مادَرِ آن دو پِسَر	۲ هـُوای (air, weather) خوب
۱۶ مادَرِ جوانِ (young) آن دو	۳ هوای خوبِ آفتابی (sunny)
پِسَر کوچکِ (small, young)	۴ دُخترِ باهوش (clever)
۱۷ پدربزُرگ ِمِهَریانِ (kind)	۵ دانِشجوی (student) جَوان
۱۸ سیبِ شیرین ِشیرازی	۶ دانشجوی جوان ایرلندی
١٩ سيبِ سَبِز و پُر تُقالِ شيرين	۷ لیموی (lemon) تُرش (sour)
۲۰ روزِگرم و شبِ سَرد	۸ پَنجَرهٔ (window) باز (open)
۲۱ کیشور (country) ایران	۹ خانِهٔ قدیمی (old)
۲۲ جَزيرهٔ (island) بريتانيا	۱۰ این دو دَرِ باز
٢٣ بِلِيطِ أُتوبوس ِتهران-اصفِهان	۱۱ دَرهای باز
۲۴ شهرهای ایران	۱۲ این درهای باز و بُزُرگ
۲۵ مَغازههای پاریس	۱۳ آن گُريهٔ (cat) سِفيد و قَشَنگ

Exercise 6

Choose your own nouns and adjectives (or groups of adjectives) from the following table to create at least ten noun-adjective + ezafe constructions and number them using the Persian numerals.

51

family, friends a other people

Adjective	Noun
ارزان	تابستان
سیاه	زمستان
گرم	ماشین
کِران	مو
سُرد	اَنگور
طلایی	بليط
خوشمَزه	صندلی
بدمزه	چای
راحت	خانه
ناراحت	كَفش

Exercise 7

Translate into Persian:

- 1 My brother.
- 2 Your small car.
- 3 Big, expensive house.
- 4 His comfortable (راحت) room.
- 5 Cold cup (فنجان) of tea.
- 6 Our golden pen.
- 7 Cheap, black shoes.
- 8 Delicious, sweet apples.
- 9 Hungry (گرسنه) young boy.
- 10 My beautiful country.



In this unit you will learn how to

- · form and use the comparative
- · compare two things
- · form and use the superlative

Bas-relief at Apadana Hall, Persepolis, around 518 BCE



Dialogue

Listen to Maryam and Amir talk about comparisons:

- مریم، تهران بزرگتر است یا اصفهان؟
 - م تهران بزرگتر است.
- اً هوای تهران گرمتر است یا هوای اصفهان؟
- م هوای اصفهان در تابستان گرمتر است. هوای اصفهان از تهران گرمتر است.
 - اً اتاق من كوچك است.
- م اتاقِ من هم خیلی کوچک است. ولی اُتاقِ کوچکِ من قَشَنگ است.
 - اً اُتاقِ تو كوچكتر ولى قَشَنگتر است.
 - م اتاقِ تو بزرگتر از اتاقِ من است ولى اتاقِ من از اتاقِ تو قَشَنگتر است.
 - اً قشنگترین شهر ایران کُدام اَست؟
 - م مشهد قشنگ است، شیراز از مشهد قشنگتر است ولی اصفهان قشنگترین شهر ایران است.
 - بلُندترین کوه ایران کدام است؟
 - م دُماوُند بلندترین کوه ایران است.
 - اً دماوند از اورست بلندتر است؟
- م نه. اورست از دماوند بلندتر است. اورست بلندترین کوه دنیاست.

A	Maryam, is Tehran bigger or Esfahan?
M	Tehran is bigger.
A	Is the weather warmer in Tehran or in Esfahan? (lit. Tehran's weather is warmer or Esfahan's)
М	Esfahan (weather) is warmer in the summer. Esfahan (weather) is warmer than Tehran.
A	My room is small.
	My room is also very small. However, my small room is nice.
A	Your room is smaller but nicer.
М	Your room is bigger than my room, but my room is nicer than yours.
A	Which is the prettiest city of Iran?
М	Mashhad is pretty, Shiraz is prettier than Mashhad, but Esfahan is the prettiest city in Iran.
A	Which is Iran's highest mountain?
M	(Mt) Damavand is Iran's highest mountain.
A	Is Damavand higher than Everest?
M	No. Mt Everest is higher than Damavand. Everest is the world's highest mountain.

Comparative and superlative adjectives

The formation of comparative and superlative adjectives in Persian is quite regular and not dissimilar to how it's done in English.

Comparative adjectives are made by adding a -tar to the adjective (similar to adding an '-er' to an English adjective):

As you see from the last example, while the formation of the comparative is not always regular in English, you can *always* form the comparative in Persian by adding a *tar* to the adjective.

The comparative follows the noun in the exact same way as the adjective or pronoun and is linked to the noun with the ezafe:

larger house khāne-ye bozorgtar خانهٔ بُزُرگتر more important news khabar-e mohemtar خَبَرِ مُهِمتَر prettier flowers golhā-ye zibātar

۱ مریم و بهرام یک خانهٔ بزرگتر در شمالِ تهران خریده اند.

1 Maryam and Bahram have bought a larger house in North Tehran.

۲ پِسُر کوچکترِ من هنوز به مدرسه نمی رَوَد.

55

2 My younger son doesn't go to school yet.

The superlative is formed by adding a ترین tarin to the noun or, if you like, an ين -in to the comparative. Again this is similar to adding an '-est' to an English noun to form the superlative:

→ small + est = smallest

کوچک + تَرین = کوچکتَرین

kuchaktarin

Or, add an ين to the comparative:

کوچکترین \rightarrow کوچکترین \rightarrow pretty \rightarrow prettier \rightarrow prettiest زیبا \rightarrow زیباتر \rightarrow زیباترین \rightarrow zibā \rightarrow zibātar \rightarrow zibātarin large \rightarrow larger \rightarrow largest بزرگتر \rightarrow بزرگتر \rightarrow بزرگترین \rightarrow bozorg \rightarrow bozorgtar \rightarrow bozorgtarin important \rightarrow more important \rightarrow most important \rightarrow mohem \rightarrow nohemtar \rightarrow nohemtarin

Note: Unlike the adjective and the comparative, the superlative does not follow the noun but comes before it and there is no ezafe link between the superlative and the noun it describes:

large house khāne-ye bozorg خانهٔ بُزُرگ khāne-ye bozorgtar خانهٔ بُزُرگتَر khāne-ye bozorgtar

the biggest house bozorgtarin khāneh بُرُرگترين خانه important news khabar-e mohem خَبَرِ مُهِم more important news khabar-e mohemtar خَبَرِ مُهِمتر the most important news mohemtarin khabar مُهمترين خَبر مُهمترين خَبر والمهمترين خَبر مُهمترين خَبر مُهم

Tehran is the largest city in Iran. tehrān bozorgtarin shahre irān ast. تهران بزرگترین شهر ایران است.

My brother's best friend lives in an old house. behtarin duste barādaram dar yek khāne-ye qadimi zendegi mi-konad.

'Yalda' (winter solstice) is the longest night of the year. shab-e 'yalda' bolandtarin shab-e sāl ast.

«شُبِ يلدا» بلُندترين شبِ سال است.

Other irregularities

Occasionally, the adjective and its comparative are different words and again there is a parallel for this in English: good \rightarrow better \rightarrow best.

The same thing can apply to the adjective خوب khub 'good' in Persian too:

خوب ← بِهِتَرين Although you can use خوبتر too but this is less common:

خوب ← خوبترين khub, khubtar, khubtarin خوب حوبترين

Showing the degree of comparison

Two nouns in a sentence are compared by the use of comparative adjectives and the preposition if az, meaning 'than'. Persian allows you two types of word order to express any comparison. Look at the following simple example: Tehran is

colder than Shiraz.

This sentence can be translated in two ways in Persian:

Both sentences are perfectly correct and commonly used. If you look at them closely the second sentence is perhaps closer to the English word order as the comparative adjective, 'colder', separates the two nouns (cities) that are being compared. Ignoring the verbs shown in parentheses, see how closely the sentences compare:

Tehran (is) colder than Shiraz.

In the first sentence, however, the preposition is az separates the two nouns that are being compared, and the comparative adjective follows the second noun:

تهران از شیراز – سردتر – است. :First sentence

Literally: Tehran than Shiraz - colder - is.

In either case, i az than always comes before the noun or object that is the standard or basis of comparison.

In the second sentence the word order is closer to the English, especially if you were to move the verb to the end of the sentence!

Tehran colder than Shiraz - is.

Here are some more examples:

موتورسیکلت بابک از ماشینِ اَحمد تُندتُر می رَوَد. motorsiklet-e bābak as māshin-e ahmad tondtar miravad. Babak's motorbike goes faster than Ahmad's car.

غُذای مندی از غُذای تایلندی تُندتر است.

ghazā-ye hendi az ghazā-ye tāylandi tondtar ast. Indian food is hotter than Thai food.

(Note: تند tond means both 'fast' and 'spicy-hot'.)

كُل لاله خيلى قَشنگتر از كل ميخك است.

gol-e lāle kheyli qashangta az gol-e mikhak ast.

Tulips are much prettier than carnations.

(Note: خیلی 'very', adverb of intensity, can precede a comparative.)

ما خیلی زودتر از شما به مهمانی رسیدیم. mā kheyli zudtar az shomā be mehmāni rasidim. We arrived at the party much earlier than you.

زبانِ فارسى سختتر است يا زبانِ عربى؟ zabān-e farsi sakht-tar ast yā zabān-e 'arabi? Is Persian (language) more difficult or Arabic?'

حسن بیشتر پول دارد یا بیژن؟ hasan bishtar pul dārad yā bizhan? Has Hasan got more money or Bizhan? (Note the use of بیشتر bishtar as 'more'.)

Exercise 1

Translate the following into Persian.

- 1 Their house is nearer to the shops.
- 2 Maryam's brother is much taller than my brother.
- 3 The tallest girl in the room is Brazilian.
- 4 His house is much bigger than mine, but my garden is bigger.

- 5 They work much harder than you.
- 6 You speak better Persian than Maria.
- 7 Tonight is warmer than last night.
- 8 This is the longest night of the year.
- 9 My best friend lives near the park.
- 10 This film is very long, longer than 'Dr Zhivago'.

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into English:

۱ امروز گرمتر از دیروز است ولی هنوز خیلی سرد است.

٢ اسم كوچكترين بَچة خواهرم روياست.

٣ گوشتِ مُرغ كم چربيتر است يا گوشتِ ماهى؟

۴ شما زودتر از ما به رستوران رسیدید.

۵ امروز حالس از دیروز بهتر است.

Exercise 3

Take part in a conversation with Amir, to practise comparing. You may need the following words: 'fog' is مه, 'sand' is ماسه, 'return' is بازگشت, 'king' is بادشاه, 'like' as in 'similar' is مثل, and 'bend it' as a footballing term is شوت بزن! or شوت بزن!

You Is Isfahan or Tehran bigger?

تهران بزرگتر است. آیا لندن از تهران بزرگتر است؟ Amir

You Yes, London is bigger than Tehran. But the weather in

Tehran is warmer.

خانهٔ شما به مرکز شهر نزدیکتر است یا خانهٔ افسانه؟ Amir

You My house is nearer to the city centre but Afsaneh's

house is the nearest to the park.

بهترین فیلم امسال کدامست؟ Amir

You 'The House of Sand and Fog' is very good, 'Return of

the King' is better, but the best film is 'Bend it Like

Beckham'.

Exercise 4

Maryam wants to know your opinion about her new dress. Translate the English into Persian and see if you can understand what Maryam is saying:

You Maryam, what a lovely dress!

قربانِ تو، مرسى. اين لباسِ خواهرم است.
You Is your sister older or younger than you?

خواهرم چهار سال از من کوچکتر است. او کوچکترین Maryam

فرزند خانواده است.

8



where is it? what? why? is it? why?

In this unit you will learn how to

- ask questions about time, place and actions
- talk about possession ('mine', 'your', etc.)
- understand different functions of question words

Dialogue

At the London Film Festival, Maryam meets someone who studies Persian and has been to Iran. She asks him about his trip: where he has been, for how long, when and how did he get around:

م	شما چه سالی به ایران رفتید؟
پ	من سالِ ۲۰۰۲ به ایران رَفتُم.
٩	چند ماه در ایران بودید؟
پ	دو ماه و نیم در ایران بودم.
٩	در داخلِ ایران خیلی مسافرت کردید؟
پ	بله. به بیشتر شهرهای بزرگ ایران سفر کردم.
م	مَثَلاً به كُدام شهرها؟
پ	به یزد، شیراز، اِصفهان، همدان، تبریز و البته تهران.
4	باچه وسیله ای سفر کردید؟
پ	بیشتر با ه واپیما، اتوبوس و ماشین شخصی سفر کردم

М	What year did you travel to Iran?
P	I went to Iran in (the year) 2002.
M	How many months were you in Iran?
P	I was there (in Iran) for two and a half months.
M	Did you travel within Iran?
P	Yes, I travelled to most of the large Iranian cities.
M	For example (to) which cities?
P	To Yazd, Shiraz, Esfahan, Hamedan, Tabriz and, of course, Tehran.
M	How did you get around (lit. travelled by which means)?
P	I travelled mostly by plane, bus and private car.

che?	what?	چه؟
che sāli?	what year?	چُه سالی؟
be	to	به
raftid	did you (2nd person pl.) go [plural used for formality]	رَفتيد

sāl-e do-hezār o do	the year 2002	سالِ ۲۰۰۲
raftam	I went	رَفتُم
chand?	how many?	چند؟
māh	month	ماه
budid	you (2nd person pl.) were	بوديد
nim	half	نيم
budam	I was	نيم بودم
dar	in, at	در
dākhel	inside, within	داخل
kheyli	much, very, many	خيلی
mosāferat kardid	you (2nd person pl.) travelled [plural used for formality]	مُسافِرَت كرديد
bale	yes	بله
bishtar	[followed by an ezafe (e)] most of, many of	بيشتَرِ
shahr, shahr-hā	city, cities	شهر .pl شُهرها
bozorg	large, big, great	ؠڒؙۯڲ
safar kardam	I travelled	سَفَركَردُم
masalan	for example, for instance	مَثَلاً
kodām?	which?	كُدام؟
albate	of course	ألبته
bā	with, by	با
vasile-i	means, tools, (here of transport) ways	وُسيله ای
havāpeymā	aeroplane	هُواپيما
otobus	bus	أتوبوس
māshin	car	ماشين
shakhsi	personal, private	شخصى

Interrogative adjectives, adverbs and pronouns

63

where is it? what? whose is it? why?

Before you start learning the Persian question words it's worth mentioning several general points about them. Persian question words seem, on the whole, to begin with the letters 'k' ≤ or 'ch' 5, similarly to the English question words, which often begin with the 'wh' sound. Another important point is that while all English question sentences start off with the question words, such as 'where are my glasses?', 'how did you get here?', 'who was that man?', and so on, the Persian question word's place in a sentence is where you expect to find the answer. For example if you ask 'who brought these flowers?', then the Persian interrogative 'who', will go at the beginning of the question sentence, because we are asking who the doer of the action is, i.e. we are enquiring about the identity of the 'subject' of the sentence, which always sits at the beginning of the Persian sentence or immediately after the adverb of time. However, if we ask 'where is your brother?', the Persian interrogative 'where', does not start the sentence, rather it will be somewhere nearer the verb, where we expect to find adverbs of place. So the order would be 'your brother where is?'. You will soon get used to the fact that unlike English, the Persian interrogatives do not have a fixed opening place in the sentence but their position is where you would expect to find the noun, adjective or adverb answer.

Persian interrogatives may be used as pronouns, i.e. replacing nouns or subjects such as 'who', 'what' and 'which one', as adjectives, when they are followed by nouns as in 'which book', 'what country', 'how many days' and 'what kind of...', or, finally, as adverbs, for example 'when', 'where', 'why' and 'how'.

The question words in the dialogue are interrogative adjectives, such as 'what year', چه سالی, 'how many months', چند ماه, 'which cities', کدام شهرها.

Dialogue

Listen to this dialogue between Maryam and Ali, paying special attention to the position of question words in the sentences:

على، ديشب كُجا بودى؟	م
دیشب به سینکما رفتم.	proj
چه فیلمی دیدی؟	م
یک فیلم کُمدی عِشقی دیدم.	
اسمِ آن فیلم چی بود؟	م
اِسمَش «یک خَتم و چهار عروسی» بود.	1
این فیلم چطور بود؟	م
خیلی خوب و خنده دار بود.	1
باکی به سینما رفتی؟	م
با فرهاد به سینما رفتم.	1
چرا با نامزُدَت نُرَفتى؟	م
چونکه او خیلی کار داشت.	1
کی به خانه برگشتی؟	م
ساعت ِیازده به خانه برگشتم.	and the

M	Ali, where were you last night?
A	I went to the cinema.
M	What film did you see?
A	I saw a romantic comedy (film).
M	What was it called? (What was its name?)
A	It was called 'Four Weddings and a Funeral'.
M	How was it?
A	It was very good and funny.
M	Who did you go to cinema with? (lit. with whom)
A	I went with Farhad.
M	Why didn't you go with your fiancée?
A	Because she was very busy (had a lot to do).
M	What time did you get home? (lit. returned)
A	I returned home at 11 o'clock.

dishab	last night	ديشب
kojā?	where?	كُجا؟
budi	you (sing.) were	بودی
cinamā	cinema	سينُما

raftam	I went	رفتم
che?	what?	جه؟
filmi	film	فيلمى
komedi	comedy	کمدی
'eshqi	romantic, lovey-dovey	عِشقى
esm	name, title	إسم
ān	that	آن
chi?	what?	چی؟
esmash	its name	إسمنش
khatm	funeral	خُتم
chahār	four	چهار
'arusi	wedding	عروسي
in	this	این
chetor?	how?	چطور؟
khande-dār	funny, lit. with laughter	ځنده دار
bā	with	وباد مو
ki?	who, whom?	کی؟
cherā?	why?	چرا؟
nāmzad	fiancée	نامزد
nāmzadat	your fiancée	نامزدت
narafti	you did not go	نُرُفتی
chonke	because	چونکه
kār dāsht	was busy (lit. had work)	کار داشت
key?	when?	کِی؟
khāne	house	خانه
bargashti	you (sing.) returned	برگشتی
sā'at	here means o'clock, hour of	ساعت
yāzdah	eleven	يازده
bargashtam	I returned	برگشتم
Dargasmam	Treturned	

65

where is it? what? whose is it? why?

Grouping of question words

Interrogative pronouns

The following are the main interrogative pronouns:

(a) کی or کی (ki) 'who', pronoun:

Who was it? کی بود؟

Who are they? آنها کی هستند؟

(b) چې or چې 'what' as a pronoun ('what things') and as adjective 'which' ('which book' or 'what a nice man')

? What have you brought for me برای من چی آوردی؟

? What did Maryam tell you مريم به تو چې (چه) گفت؟

(c) كَدَامِ 'which one', pronoun (note it is not 'which book' or 'which teachers', that would make it an interrogative adjective):

از این دو کتاب کُدام را می خواهند؟ Which one of these two books do they want?

Interrogative adverbs

The following are some common adverbial question words or interrogative adverbs:

(a) كُجا 'where', adverb of place.

?Where are you going دیروز کُجا بودی؟

- . چه وقت ,چه موقع when', also کی (b)
- . برای چه or برای چی why', also چرا (c)
- . چگونه how', also' چطور (d)
- (e) چند تا 'how much' چقدر 'how many'.

Use of māl مال, 'property' to show ownership

To express possession in Persian and to distinguish between 'this is my book' and 'this book is mine', you place the noun

māl, lit. 'property' after the possessed and before the possessor. Note that the word مال is linked by an ezafe to the possessor but is not vocally linked to the possessed:

67

This house is mine. (lit. my property)

These books are mine. این کتابها مال آنهاست.

آن دو صندلی مال این اُتاق است ولی این میز چویی مال آن اتاق است. Those two chairs belong to this room but this wooden chair belongs to that room.

Note: You can introduce a question without using any of the interrogative words but instead using the particle $(\bar{a}y\bar{a})$. This is usually done in written Persian:

إين كتاب مال شماست؟ āyā in ketāb māl-e shomāst؟ Is this book yours?

آیا آن پالتو گران اُست؟ āyā ān pālto gerān ast? Is that coat expensive?

In spoken Persian, questions that do not contain an interrogative word are usually indicated by a rising intonation at the end of the sentence, rather than the use of Lī.

Answers to questions

Both بله cherā and بله bale mean 'yes', but the difference between them is that bale is the positive answer to a positive (affirmative) question. For example, if the answer to 'Is your brother here?' is positive then we must use بله bale as the answer:

آیا برادرت اینجاست؟ بله، اینجاست.

But if the question is negative and the answer is positive then cherā must be used:

Is your brother not here? إبرادرت اينجا نيست؟

Yes, he is here. چرا، اینجاست.

Exercise 1

Translate the following dialogue into English:

م این عینک مال کیست؟

د کدام عینک؟

م این عینک آفتابی. مال توست داریوش؟

نه، این عینک مالِ من نیست، مالِ اُمیر است. این کتابها

و این کلید مال کیست؟

م كتابها مالِ برادرم است و كليد مالِ من است.

د برادرت إمروز كجاست؟ چرا اينجا نيست؟

م امروز برادرم در خانهٔ رضاست.

، رضا کیست؟

م رضا همكارِ برادرم است. رضا عكاس است.

د آیا برادر تو هم عکاس است؟

م نه، برادرم طراح گرافیک است.

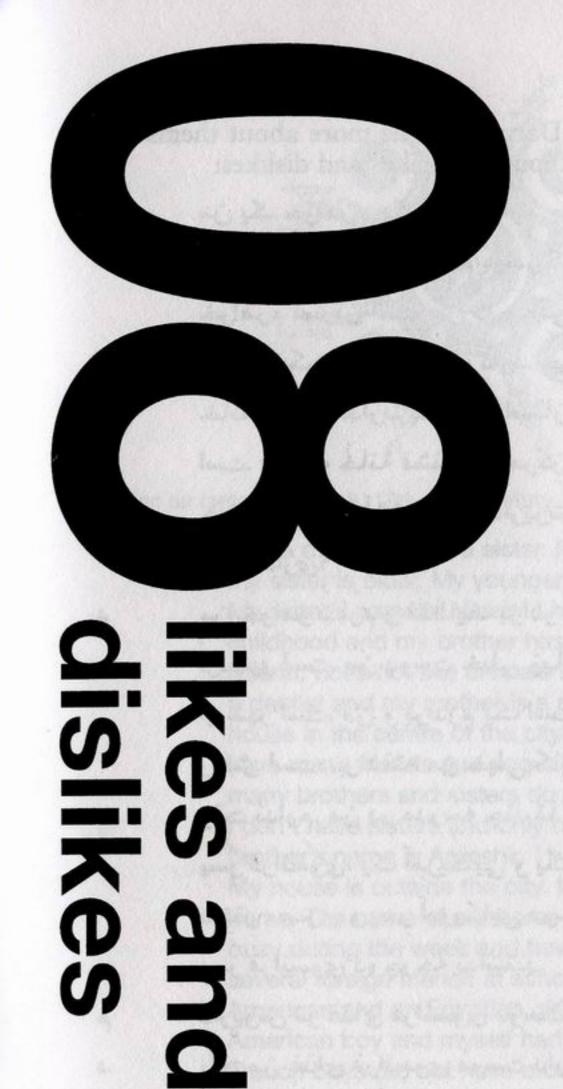
Exercise 2

And shire on si severa and he

Use of mai. L. on

Give your own answers to the following questions in Persian:

- ١ اسم شما چيست؟
- ٢ اسم فاميل شما چيست؟
 - ٣ خانهٔ شما كجاست؟
- ۴ اسم مادر و پدر شما چیست؟
 - ٥ تُولد شما كي اُست؟
 - ۶ شما کُجا به دنیا آمدید؟
- ٧ شما روزها چكار مي كنيد؟
 - ۸ آیا دانشجو هستید؟
- ٩ آيا خواهريا برادر داريد؟
 - ١٠ ساعت الآن چند است؟



In this unit you will learn how to

- use the verb 'to have' (past and present)
- say some more about yourself
- talk about your likes and dislikes

71

Dialogue

Listen to Maryam and Dariush tell us more about themselves and talk to each other about some likes and dislikes:

من یک خواهر و یک برادر دارم. برادر من کوچکتر و خواهرم بزرگتر است. اسم برادر کوچکتر من رضاست. اسم خواهرم نسرین است. من در بچگی یک گربهٔ سفید داشتم و برادرم یک خرگوش سیاه دارد. خواهرم، نسرین، حیوان در خانه دوست ندارد. پدرم دندانساز است و مادرم نقاش است. ما یک خانهٔ قشنگ در مرکز شهر داریم. پدر و مادرم خیلی دوست و آشنا دارند. داریوش تو چند تا خواهر و برادر داری؟

من خواهر ندارم و فقط یک برادر دارم. نام برادر من اردشیر است. من دوست خیلی زیاد دارم. خانهٔ من بیرون از شهر است. من و برادرم یک اسب داریم. اسم اسب ما رخش است. در هفته من خیلی کار دارم و برای سواری وقت ندارم. من در مدرسه چند تا دوست خارجی داشتم: دو پسر فرانسوی، یک آمریکایی و یک دختر مصری. من و آن دختر مصری و پسر آمریکایی دوچرخه داشتیم ولی آن دو پسر فرانسوی دوچرخه نداشتند.

داریوش تو غذای فرانسوی دوست داری؟

بله، من غذای فرانسوی دوست دارم، ولی غذای ایرانی و لبنانی بیشتر دوست دارم. تو چطور؟

من هم غذای ایرانی خیلی دوست دارم. ولی خواهرم غذای ژاپنی دوست دارد. تو موسیقی، فیلم و ورزش دوست داری؟ من موسیقی جاز، پاپ و کلاسیک دوست دارم. برادرم

فوتبال و بسكتبال دوست دارد و من خيلي تنيس دوست دارم. ما، هر دو، فیلم پلیسی خیلی دوست داریم.



Design on large metal dish, 12th-13th century

I have a brother and a sister. My brother is younger and my sister is older. My younger brother's name is Reza. My sister's name is Nasrin. I had a white cat in childhood and my brother has a black rabbit. My sister, Nasrin, does not like animals in the house. My father is a dentist and my mother is a painter. We have a nice house in the centre of the city. My mother and father have many friends and acquaintances. Dariush, how many brothers and sisters do you have?

I don't have sisters and only have a brother. My brother's name is Ardeshir. I have very many friends. My house is outside the city. My brother and I have a horse. The name of our horse is 'Rakhsh'. I am very busy during the week and have no time for riding. I had several foreign friends at school: two French boys, one American and an Egyptian girl. The Egyptian girl, the American boy and myself had bicycles, but the two French boys did not have a bike.

Dariush, do you like French food?

Yes, I like French food, but I like Persian and Lebanese food more. How about you?

I also very much like Persian food. However, my sister likes Japanese food. Do you like music, films and sports?

I like jazz, pop and classical music. My brother likes football and basketball and I really like tennis. We both really like police films.

khāhar	sister	خواهر
barādar	brother	برادُر
kuchaktar	smaller, younger	كوچكتر
bozorg-tar	bigger, older	بُزُرگتَر
Rezā	boy's name	رِضا
Nasrin	girl's name	نُسرين
bachegi	childhood	بَچِگی
gorbe	cat	گریه
sefid	white	سفيد
dāshtam	I had	داشتُم
khargush	rabbit	خُرگوش
siyāh	black	سیاه سیاه
dārad	he, she has	دارُد
khāharam	my sister	خواهرم
heyvān	animal	حيوان
dar	in	دُر
khāne	house, home	خانِه
dust	usually friend, here, liking	دوست
-na	negative marker	emA()
na-dārad	does not have	نُدارُد
dandānsāz	dentist	دُندانسان
naqqāsh	painter	نقاش
markaz	centre	مرکز
shahr	city	شهر
dārim	we have	شهر داریم خیلی
kheyli	very, much	
dust	friend	دوست

va	and	
āshnā	acquaintance	آشنا
dārand	they have	دارند
chand tā	(as question) how many?	چند تا
dāri	you have	داری
na-dāram	I don't have	نُدارُم
faqat	only	فقط
Ardeshir	boy's name	أردِشير
kheyli ziyād	very much	خیلی زیاد
khāne-ye man	my house (lit. house of mine)	خانهٔ من
birun	outside	بيرون
az	of	اًذ المعادمة على
asb	horse	اُسب
mā	us	ما
Rakhsh	name of legendary horse	رُخش
hafte	week	هُفته
kār	jobs, work, things that keep one busy	کار
kār drram	I am busy	کار دارکم
barāy-e	for	برای
savāri	riding	سواری
vaqt	time	وُقت
vaqt nadāram	I don't have time	وِقت ندارم
madrese	school	مدرسه
chand tā	several	چُند تا خارجی
khāreji	foreign	خارجي
dāshtam	I had	داشتُم

73 likes and dislikes

To have

The verb 'to have' داشتن dāshtan is an irregular verb, more irregular than our standard irregular Persian verbs such as 'to come' آمدن āmadan, which we will look at in detail shortly, but not as irregular as the verb 'to be', discussed earlier.

The various forms of the verb 'to have' can be conjugated regularly but this verb does not take on any verbal prefixes such as the continuous prefix -mi مى or the subjunctive prefix -be that we will cover in later units.

This irregularity does not affect the formation of the simple past tense but, as with all other irregular Persian verbs, we need to know the present stem before we proceed to work out the various present tense forms of the verb. The present stem of the verb داشتن can be found in the list of irregular stems provided in the appendix.

'to have' داشتن to have'

The present stem of دار is داشتن dar. However, the standard present tense formation formula (shown in full in Unit 13) cannot be applied to this verb in its entirety.

The irregular nature of 'to have' in Persian dictates that this verb does not take any prefixes in its present tense forms. Therefore the general formula which is: present tense = subject endings + present stem + مى -mi has to be modified for the verb 'to have'.

The modified formula is: present tense of داشتن = subject endings + دار dār.

The six forms of the present indicative of 'to have' are:

S	ingular	Plural
1 6	دار dāram I have	داريم dārim we have
2 (داري dāri you have	دارید dārid you (pl.) have
3	دار dārad he, she, it has	دارند darand they have

The negative present tenses of 'to have' are:

	Singular	Plural
1	nadāram I do not have	nadārim we do not have
2	nadāri you do not have ندارى	nadārid you (pl.) do نداريد
3	nadārad he, she, it does ندارَد	not have ندارند <i>nadārand</i> they do not
	not have	have

75

likes and dislikes

Exercise 1

Translate into Persian:

- Maryam and Amir have a very nice, small house.
- 2 I don't like Japanese food, but like Lebanese food.
- They have a lot of work tomorrow.
- Do you have any friends in Paris?
- My brother's wife has six uncles (maternal).

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

من یک کلبهٔ کوچک در کوهستان نزدیک دریاچهٔ مازندران دارم. این کلبه نه برق دارد نه تلفن ولی منظرهٔ آن خیلی قشنگ است. نزدیک کلبه یک چشمهٔ آب است. این کلبه دو سه تا صندلی، یک میزِ چوبی، یک تختخوابِ بزرگ، یک آشپزخانهٔ کوچک و یک بخاری دیواری دارد. این کلبه دور از شهر بهترین جا برای استراحت است.

داشتن Past tense of

For the simple past we follow the standard formula that helps us form all past tense verbs: past tense = subject ending + past stem.

Subject endings are the same as the endings of all Persian verbs that tell you who the doer of the verb is. Their use is compulsory and without them the verb will be incomplete. They tell us exactly who the subject of any action is and therefore, unlike English, we do not need to use a subject pronoun in a Persian sentence. The subject pronouns were discussed in detail earlier in the book but the following table lists the verb endings for use in this unit.

Singular	Plural
1st I -am	we يم -im
2nd you ی -i	you ید -id
3rd s/he * no suffix for past tenses	they ند -and

* -ad is never used with the past tense verbs: this means that the third person singular of Persian past tense verbs does not have an attached subject marker or suffix.

The past stem of داشتن is formed by dropping the عن -an ending which leaves us داشت dāsht.

The six forms of 'to have' in the simple past can be seen in the following table.

	Singular	Plural
1	داشتَم dāshtam I had	داشتیم dāshtim we had
2	داشتی dāshti you had	داشتید dāshtid you (pl.) had
3	داشت dāsht he, she, it had	dāshtand they had داشتند

The six negative forms are shown in the following table.

	Singular	Plural
1	nadāshtam I did نداشتم	nadāshtim we did
	not have	not have
2	nadāshti you did نداشتی	nadāshtid you (pl.) نَداشتيد
	not have	did not have
3	nadāsht he, she, it نداشت	nadāshtand they نداشتند
	did not have	did not have

Remember that there is no subject suffix (or ending) for the third person singular in any of the past tense verbs.

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 We had two cars in Iran.
- 2 She had a horse, two cats, chickens and rabbits in her house in Turkey.
- 3 They had several friends in Tehran.
- 4 How much money did you have yesterday?
- 5 I did not have a television but had an old radio.

Exercise 4

Fill the gaps with an appropriate past tense form of the verb to have or the correct subject pronoun:

- ۱ من در ایران چند دوستِ ایتالیایی _____
- ۲ ___ در آن شهر خیلی دوست و آشنا داشتید؟
 - ٣ ___ روز سه شُنبه خيلي كار داشت.
- ۴ ما سه روز برای کار در لندن بودیم ولی برای گردش وقت نــــــــــ

Advanced use of present and past forms of 'to have'

In more advanced use of language, the verb 'to have', in both present and past tenses, is also used as an auxiliary verb, expressing the sense of progression of an action, i.e. that an action is taking place right now or will take place imminently, or that it was taking place when it was superseded or interrupted by another action.

In the present tense

For example, someone is telling you to 'Hurry up and get going'. The response might be:

Or someone asks, 'What is Ali doing just now?' The reply:

Ali is reading his book (right now). على دارد كتاب مي خواند.

In the past tense

'What were you doing when I called last night?':

I was watching television. داشتم تلویزیون تماشا می کردم. I was about to داشتم از در بیرون می رفتم که تلفن زنگ زد. leave when the phone rang. (lit. leaving through the door)

The indefinite: 'a' or 'one' added to nouns, 'some'

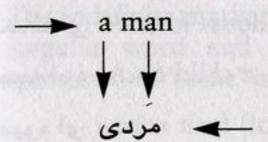
The status of a noun in Persian is not exactly the same as it is in English and the ideas of 'definite' or 'indefinite' do not correspond exactly to what we understand by these terms in English.

The Persian noun appears instead in two ways, the 'absolute' and the 'non-specific'. What do we mean by these terms? The noun in its absolute state is a noun with no attachments, no suffix or any other 'bits' joined onto it. It is the word as found in a dictionary. Such a noun can indicate both a very specific singular word and the generic. In English, the generic, which is the general term for something or a group of things, is usually gol flower means both گل gol flower means 'the flower', about which we know something already, and 'flowers' in general, as in 'I like to have flowers in the house'.

How do you render the sense of 'a house', 'a book' or 'a car' in Persian, that is, how do you form the non-specific also known as the indefinite in Persian?

Broadly speaking, a noun becomes indefinite, or non-specific, in Persian through the addition of the suffix (or attachment) is i to its pure form as found in a dictionary.

This is, of course, not at all dissimilar to the way in which a non-specific English noun is formed, except the 'a' is not fixed onto the English word; the sis joined onto the Persian word if possible: 'a book', simply means any old book, as in 'I found a book on the shelf' not a particular, specific book:



The indefinite is expressed in three ways in Persian:

- by adding an & to the end of the noun as just demonstrated
- by putting the word 'one'/ 'a', wek, before the definite
- by using both يك and & (the most common spoken form).

Look at these examples:

a book
$$ketabi$$
 کتاب $=$ کتاب $=$ کتاب $+$ (book) کتاب $=$ کتاب $+$ (one) کتاب $=$ یک کت

79

and dislikes

If two or more nouns are joined by the 'co-ordinate' , va and are all non-specific (indefinite), the indefinite marker & i is added to the final one only, the group being regarded as a whole:

The s i is only added to the last word in the group, which is خودكار khodkār biro.

Writing rules

That's all there is to the formation of non-specific words in Persian! Before we move on, however, we must look at how to add an s i to the end of a word that already ends with a vowel; words such as سيني ju 'smell'; بو sini في sini ميني sini 'tray'; and خانه khāne 'house'.

If the noun ends with a final, short vowel or the 'silent' he, the indefinite is spelt with an alef + i.e. (12), that is still pronounced as i:

Care must be taken to distinguish between the final, silent he, which is simply an indicator of the presence of a final short e vowel, and the real letter he, which is a true consonant and therefore the indefinite article & can join onto it directly:

a house khāne-i خانه ای a child bache-i بُچه

a (piece of) fruit mive-i میوه ای

As opposed to words that end in the letter 4b:

a mountain kuhi كوهي

a moon māhi ماهي

a path or road rahi راهي

Similarly, if a word ends in the long vowel عندلی i, e.g. عندلی sandali 'chair' or طوطی tuti 'parrot', the indefinite ending will be ای i:

a chair sandali-i صندلی ای a chair sandali + دا) + chair sandali صندلی

Other vowel endings

If the word ends in either an $|\bar{a}|$ such as $|\bar{a}|$ $|\bar{a}|$ gentleman' or |u| as in |u| as in |u| of the indefinite marker is simply doubled to compensate for two vowels coming together:

a gentleman $\bar{a}q\bar{a}$ -i (a, one) یی + gentleman $\bar{a}q\bar{a}$

a hair mu-i مو + hair mu مو + hair mu مو

An alternative to doubling the ω of the indefinite marker is inserting a hamze over a bearer (ω) between the final long vowels I \bar{a} and ω and the indefinite article ω :

ہا ← ہائی or ہایی a foot *pā-i*

مو ← موئى or مويى a hair mu-i

Writing rules at a glance

Example	Indefinite ending	Example	Vowel ending word
صندلی ای	ای	صندکی ای	ی
خانه ای - میوه ای	ای	خانِه – ميوه	4-0
مویی	یی	مو	danie e man
آقایی	یی	آقا	oned quel tito

The indefinite marker ω i can accompany a plural as well as a singular word and the plural, non-specific noun will be translated as 'some' instead of 'a' or 'one':

some books ketābhā-i کتابهایی

81

dislikes

شهرهایی some cities shahrhā-i

If the most common form of Persian plural, i.e. $h\bar{a}$, is used then the plural of all nouns formed in this way will inevitably end with the long vowel $l\bar{a}$ and the indefinite of all plurals made this way will always be always be always be always be will be doubled. For example:

کتابهاییor کتابهائی some books دُختَرهایی some girls

some flower pots or vases گُلدانهائی or گُلدانهایی

Exercise 5

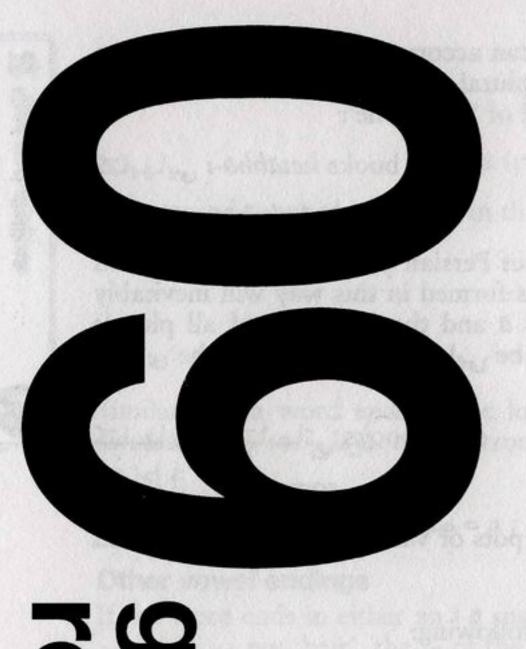
Form the indefinite of the following:

	table Sycamor a ran	
پرنده	شب به برای این	كشور
أستاد	صبُح	ميز
مُرد	مفته	كوه
همسایه	آقا	كتاب
خوابگاه	ل	دوستان
گُربِه	جُزيرهها	قَلَم
شَهر	راه	صَندَلی
أسبها	ماهی	دُر
خانه	ستاره	روز

Exercise 6

Translate the following into Persian:

a man	a house	some boys
a cat	a star	a flower
some cities	some fruits	a child



avoid sensos

reference u

Time for another pause to look at some more grammatical terminology before we start on learning proper verbs and all the different tenses that we need.

Verbs

Verbs are words or phrases that express what someone or something is doing or feeling, or the state somebody or something is in or is becoming. In many Indo-European languages, verbs can be grouped together according to the way they behave or conjugate. In some languages, and English is an example, verb conjugation is very simple. For example, the verb 'to cost' possesses only three forms: 'cost', 'costs' and 'costing'. (Similarly the verb 'to cut'.)

Persian verbs are not as simple to conjugate as English verbs but compared to German or French, for example, they are still a lot easier to learn.

Persian has developed a very logical system for verb conjugation. There are very simple formulas that the learner can quickly grasp in order to arrive at the correct form of verbs for any sentence. However, like most other languages, Persian verbs are either regular or irregular. The irregularity of a Persian verb affects it only in the present tenses (as in 'I travel', 'you are going' or 'they want to sell'). Otherwise the formulas for conjugation of verbs are very straightforward.

Before we start on the verbs it is important to get used to certain terminology.

In many languages a verb consists of the following parts.

Infinitive

This is the form by which the verb is usually listed in dictionaries or is referred to. In English there is only one pattern for infinitives. It is always 'to read', 'to speak', 'to dance'. In Persian, as we shall see very soon, infinitives fall into three distinct patterns.

Root

This is the most basic form of the verb to which other prefixes or suffixes are added to form other parts. 'Do' is the root of 'to

do' and '-ing' or '-es' can be added to create other forms of the same verb.

The Persian verb has two roots or *stems* as it is also sometimes called. I find it easier to think of the infinitive of the verb as an egg with the egg white and the egg yolk as its two roots or stems. Each can be separated from the whole and, by adding different ingredients to the roots, other forms of the verb can be made, in exactly the same way that mayonnaise or meringues can be made, starting with the base material of either an egg yolk or an egg white.

Mood

This is, if you like, how a verb expresses itself to tell us whether it is indicative, subjunctive, conditional or imperative (as in giving commands). For a culinary equivalent think of milk chocolate, plain chocolate, white chocolate and cooking chocolate as different moods of the same verb.

Indicative mood states a real action such as 'I arrived yesterday' or 'I am writing a letter'.

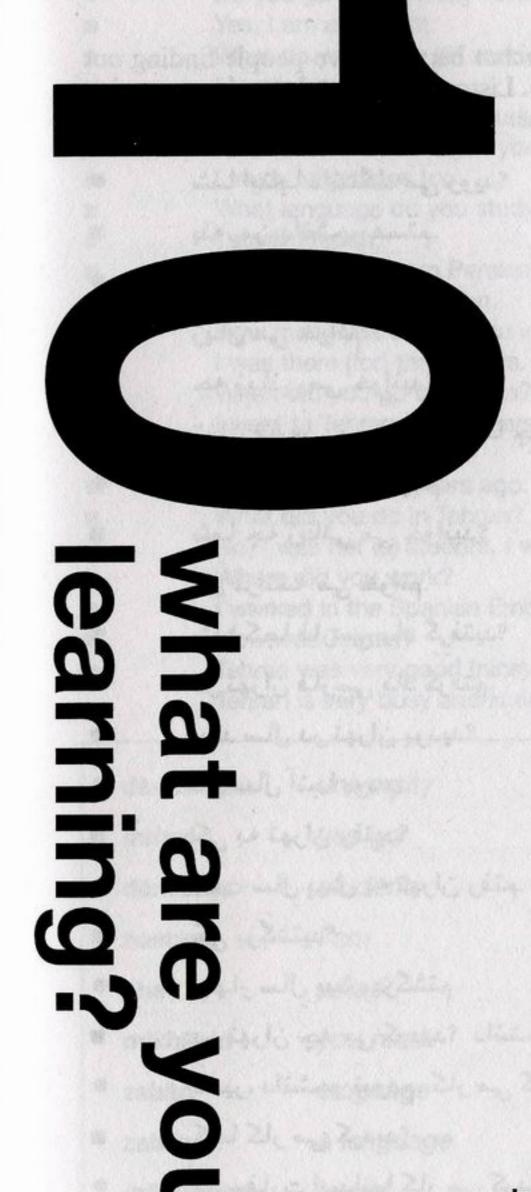
Subjunctive is the mood for expression of the desired, the anticipated, the feared, the possible, obligatory, doubtful, implied or conditional action, e.g. 'I hope to go to Iran in the summer', 'He may find a cheaper ticket' or 'They don't want to leave London, but he has to find a new job'.

In other words, in opposition to the indicative, which is the mood of real action, the subjunctive is used in situations where the realization of the action is not considered as certain.

Tense

This is the form of the verb indicating the time of the action, as in past or present or future etc.: 'I went to Canada last summer', 'They are sitting in the car', 'We will be in Europe next July'.

This is the most basic form of the work to which other pustings?



In this unit you will learn how to

- use simple verbs
- · form the simple past tense
- use different verbs for situations in the past

Dialogue

Listen to the informal chitchat between two people finding out about what the other does. Listen closely to the verbs appearing at the end of each sentence:

ه می روید؟	ا دانشگاه	اينج	شما	

- بله، من دانشجو هستم.
 - چه می خوانید؟
 - زبان مي خوانم.
- چه زبانی می خوانید؟
- زبانِ فارسى مى خوانم. شما چه مى خوانيد؟
 - من هم زبان می خوانم.
 - شما چه زبانی می خوانید؟
 - من فرانسه مي خوانم.
 - شما کجا فارسی یاد گرفتید؟
 - در تهران فارسی یاد گرفتم.
 - چند سال در تهران بودید؟
 - سه سال آنجا بودم.
 - کی به تهران رفتید؟
 - هفت سال پیش به تهران رفتم.
 - کی برگشتید؟
 - چهار سال پیش برگشتم.
 - در تهران چه می کردید؟ دانشجو بودید؟
 - نخير، دانشجو نبودم. كار مى كردم.
 - کجا کار می کردید؟
 - در سفارت اسپانیا کار می کردم.
 - تهران چطور بود؟
- تهران خیلی خوب بود ولی اصفهان بهتر بود. تهران خیلی شلوغ است و به قشنگی اصفهان هم نیست.

- Do you go to university here?
- Yes, I am a student.
- What do you study (lit. read)?
 - I study languages.
- What language do you study?
- I study Persian. What do you read/study?
- I study languages too.
- What language do you study?
- I study French.
- Where did you learn Persian?
- I learnt Persian in Tehran.
- How many years were you in Tehran?
- I was there (for) three years.
- When did you go to Tehran?
- I went to Tehran seven years ago.
- When did you return?
- I came back four years ago.
- What did you do in Tehran? Were you (a) student?
- No, I was not (a) student. I was working.
- Where did you work?
- I worked in the Spanish Embassy.
- How was Tehran?
- Tehran was very good (nice), but Esfahan was better.

Tehran is very busy and is not as beautiful as Esfahan.

87

what are you learning?

dāneshgāh	university	دانشگاه
miravid	you go	می رُوید
dāneshju	student	دانشجو
hastam	I am	هُستُم
che?	what?	چه؟
mikhānid	you read	می خوانید
zabān	language	زُیان
zabāni	a language	زیانی
mikhānam	I read	می خوانم
ham	also	هم
farānce	French	فرانسه

kojā?	where?	کجا؟ ۵۰ بره بره
yād gereftid	you learnt	باد گرفتید
yād gereftam	I learnt	باد گُرفتُم
chand?	how many?	چند؟
sāl	year	سال
budid	you were	وديد
budam	I was	ودَم
key?	when?	کی؟
be	to	Commence a
raftid	you went)فتيد
sāl-e pish	year(s) ago	سالِ پیش
haft	seven	n and Fort bas
raftam	I went	رَفتُم سيورون الم
bargashtid	you returned	ِر گ شتید
bargashtam	I returned	بَرگشتُم
dar	in, at	٠,
che mikardid?	what did you do?	چه می کردید؟
nakheyr	polite no	نَّخير
nabudam	I was not	نبودَم
kār	work, job	کار
kār mikardam	I worked	کارمی کُردم
kār mikardid	you worked	کارمی کردید
sefārat	embassy	سفارت
espāniā	Spain	سهانيا
chetor?	how	چطور؟
chetor bud?	how was it?	چطور بود؟
kheyli khub	very good	خیلی خوب

vali	but, however	ولى
behtar	better	بِهِتَر
sholugh	busy, crowded	شُلوغ
ast	is	ر اُست 🚽 🏎
be qashanigi	as pretty as	به قَشَنگی
nist	is not	نيست

The infinitive

All Persian verbs are derived from the infinitive root. In Persian dictionaries the verbs are listed in their infinitive form.

All Persian infinitives end in : -an (as all German infinitives end in -en, e.g. spielen). For example:

raftan to go رفتن	āmadan to come آمدن
خريدُن kharidan to buy	neshastan to sit نشستن
bordan to win بردن	paridan to jump پریدن
pokhtan to cook پختن	دادن dādan to give
davidan to run دُويدُن	

If you look more closely, however, you will see that Persian infinitives actually have three distinct endings which are: تُن – -dan and – -idan.

Verb formation

Simple past

Stage I

By far the easiest Persian verbs to form are the past tense verbs, that is verbs referring to actions that happened in the past. The main component that will enable us to form our past tense verbs is the past stem. The past stem, also known as the short infinitive, is made by simply dropping the infinitive.

For example, the past stem (or short infinitive) of the preceding examples, after dropping the : -an, will be:

Infinitive	Past stem	(short infinitive)
رَفتَن	رَفت →	raft
نشُستَن	نشَست →	neshast
پُختَن	ُ پُخت →	pokht
آمدَن	آمد →	āmad
بُردَن	, برد →	bord
دادَن	داد →	dād
خُريدُن	خُريد ←	kharid
پُريدُن	پُرید →	parid
گفتن	گُفت →	goft

Look closely at these short infinitives. Can you work out their common features? Look even closer. What are the endings of the past stems given here as examples in the right-hand column? It should be fairly obvious that all Persian past stems end in either = t or = d.

The past stem in Persian has another special feature. It is identical to the third person singular past tense of that verb, i.e. the same as an action done by the doer in the simple past. So just by using the past stem on its own you can convey a very simple, but perfectly accurate, idea in Persian, such as 'Maryam went', 'he jumped', 'Darius said' and 'she arrived'. Bearing in mind that, in Persian word order, the verb always comes at the end of the sentence, and that there is no gender ('he' or 'she' is always (1) these four short sentences can be translated as:

> مریم رفت. .Maryam went He jumped. او پرید. داریوش گفت. .Darius said او آمد. .She arrived

How about using the following combinations as subjects (that is the agents or doers) of the verb to form your own sentences using those same verbs: 'my mother', 'his younger brother', 'our

guest' and 'her Iranian friend'? These are all third person, singular subjects. Your sentences should look like these:

مادرم رفت. My mother went. برادر کوچکش پرید. . His younger brother jumped مهمان ما گفت... ...Our guest said... دوست ایرانیش آمد. . Her Iranian friend arrived 91

As you can see, even before learning to form the Persian verbs in full you can easily create short sentences.

Let's move on to Stage II.

Stage II

Apart from the past stem, which is the main component of past tense verbs, we need another ingredient before we construct a Persian verb referring to an action done in the past. This crucial ingredient is the subject verb ending, which is an essential part of the Persian verb. The English verb, on its own, does not tell us who the agent is. We say: 'I went', 'you went', 'we went', 'they went', 'she went' and so on. It is therefore crucial that a proper name or a pronoun or noun is used in the English sentence to indicate who the doer of the action is. In Persian however, the doer of the verb must be clearly represented in the structure of the verb, which means a suffix is attached as a verb ending. This will show us who the subject is.

The good news is that you will only have to learn these endings once. Incidentally, once we reach the unit on present tense verbs you will see that, with one small exception, the same endings are used for present tenses too.

The following table shows you the subject of the verb in the endings or suffixes in Persian and demonstrates to which pronoun or person they correspond:

Singular	Plural
1st I -am	we يم -im
ن 2nd you ع -i	you يد -id
3rd s/he no suffix	and- ند they

Conjugation, or verb formation, in Persian is so regular that

you can actually use a simple formula to construct almost all the verbs of your choice.

The formula for simple past tense in Persian is: simple past = past stem + personal endings.

Let us start with one of the simplest examples and work our way through. How would you say 'I went' in Persian?

To begin with, let us find what the infinitive of the verb 'to go' is in Persian. The vocabulary at the back of the book or any good dictionary should tell you that 'to go' in Persian is: رفتن raftan. Remember, though, that in the dictionary you look up 'go' and not 'to go'.

Can you extract the past stem from the infinitive رَفْتَن All you have to do is drop the ن -n from the ending: رَفْت → رفتن raft.

Next, look for the verb ending that corresponds to 'I', which the table should give you as: -am. Now put these ingredients in our simple past formula: 'I went' = رَفْتُ + مَ تَوْتُ مَ اللهُ raftam.

How about 'you went'? Again as in the above example, find the corresponding subject ending for 'you' singular which is & -i, therefore: 'you went' = رفت + ی = rafti.

Now try 'she went' in Persian. What is the subject ending for third person singular that corresponds to 'he' or 'she'? The table will show you that there is no ending for the third person singular subject. So our formula will look like this: 'she went' = __ + رَفْت = رَفْت + ___

Reminder: The third person singular of any Persian verb referring to the simple past is exactly the same as the past stem of that verb.

Note: As Persian verbs always contain an ending which tells us who the subject is, there is rarely any need to use a subject pronoun in the sentence. For example, to translate the sentence 'we arrived', it is enough to say آمديم āmadim, and it is not necessary to translate the 'we' as well, since the ending يم im, already indicates who is the agent of the verb 'to arrive'. However, subject pronouns are used for extra emphasis, for example, if we want to stress the fact that it was we who arrived and not another group then the sentence can be translated as ما آمديم mā āmadim.

Exercise 1

Complete the following sentences using the appropriate subject verb endings.

١ شما به خانهٔ على رفت...

93

what are you learning?

- ۲ آنها، صبح به بازار رفت...
- ٣ ما ديروز دريک چلوکبابي ناهار خورد...
 - ۴ تو کی به لندن آمد...؟
 - ۵ دیشب برادر تو را در سینما دید...
 - ۶ مریم و بابک در کتابخانه بود...
 - ٧ من ديروز در خانه ماند...
 - ۸ من و برادرم یک گربهٔ سفید داشت...
 - ۹ دیشب هوا سرد بود...
 - ۱۰ شما چند روز پیش به تهران رسید ...؟

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

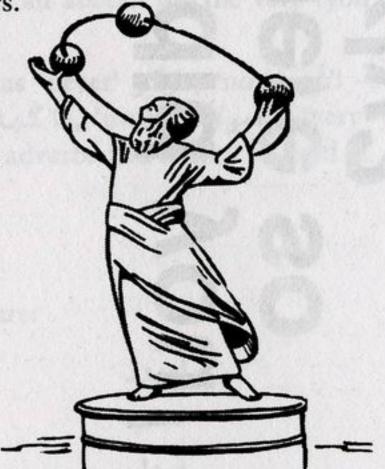
She came to our house last night.

I was in Shiraz for three years. We arrived in London two

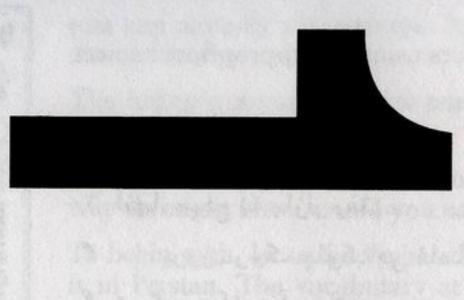
days ago.

4 Maryam and Ali saw a very good film on Saturday.

5 Did you (sing.) buy anything in the market this morning?



Abu Reyhan Biruni, 11th-century mathematician, Lalleh Park, Tehran



how did you get here so guickly?

In this unit you will learn how to

- describe how things happened or were done
- describe where things happened or were done
- describe in what manner things happened or were done

Adverbs

What are adverbs? Adverbs are words that affect the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb and are mainly used to nuance the action of verbs, for example, in the sentences 'she ran quickly' or 'you spoke beautifully', the words 'quickly' and 'beautifully' are adverbs, giving more information about the verbs 'ran' and 'spoke' respectively.

An adverb can also affect an adjective as in: 'I saw a very pretty bird'. Here the adverb 'very' intensifies the meaning of the adjective 'pretty'.

And finally, an adverb can add more emphasis to another adverb, as in 'he walks very quickly'. Here 'very' emphasizes the sense of 'quickly', itself an adverb describing the state of the verb 'walk'.

Before we look at some examples of common Persian adverbs I must remind you that in Persian, adverbs and adjectives often look the same. For example the word 'pretty' can mean both 'beautiful' or 'beautifully' depending on what part of the sentence it is used to describe:

Your beautiful letter arrived. نامهٔ قَشَنگِ شما رِسيد.

You write beautifully. شما قشنگ می نویسید.

In the first sentence, the word sentence and is an adjective for 'letter', but, in the second sentence, means 'beautifully' and is an adverb for the verb 'you write'.

However, some adverbs, such as 'never' هَرَكِز, 'now' الآن, 'still' الآن, 'suddenly' ناگهان, 'usually' أكنون, 'very' and so on, only ever act as adverbs and cannot be used as adjectives.

Adverbs of time

Some common adverbs of time are:

today	مروز
tonight	مشب
tomorrow	ردا
yesterday	،يروز

So

last night	ديشب
this year	إمسال
now	اَكنون
never	مرگز جواد است
always	هُميشه
sometimes	گاهی اس به ماهوی در
often	اَغلَب المعالمة المعا
later	بعداً المستعدد المستعدد

Adverbs of place

Any word that tells us where an action is taking place but here are some general adverbs of place:

there	آنجا
here	اينجا
up	بالا
down	پایین
front	جِلُو
back	عُقب الشالا مالا أنه عالاً ا
outside	بيرون-خارج
inside	درون - داخل

Adverbs of manner

For sequence

first, second, fourth,	اَوَل، دُوم، چَهارم،	
tenth, etc.	ر مم	Marie Sa
then	سپِس	
time to time	دُمادم	
then	پُس	
		NORTH .

one after the other	پشتِ سرِ هم
continuously	پیاپی
one by one	یکی یکی

For quantity

little	کم	
much, very	زیاد	
many, much, very	بسيار	
much, very	خیلی در	
little, a bit	اندک	
a bit, just a little, a touch	خُرده	

Many adjectives such as 'fast', 'slow', 'pretty', 'ugly', 'good', 'bad' and so on can be used as adverbs. These phrases can be used similarly (and some can double as adjectives):

how did you get here so quickly?

friendly	دوستانه
luckily, fortunately	خُوشبختانه
unfortunately	بدبختانه
gradually, 'slowly, slowly', 'calmly, calmly'	آرام آرام
fast, quick (as adj.), fast, quickly (as adv.)	تُند
with enmity, angrily	خُصمانه
smilingly, cheerfully	خُندان
in tears, tearfully	گریان
with difficulty	به دُشواری
by force, forcibly, زُحمَت grudgingly	به زور – به
on foot	پیاده
with hesitation, reluctantly	با تُرديد

Tools, equipment, modes of transport, etc. can also be used as adverbs. These are often used in conjunction with the preposition in meaning 'by' or 'with':

by air, by aeroplane	با هواپيما
with the hammer	با چَکُش
with a biro, pen	با خودكار
by ship	با کُشتی

Exercise 1

1 We ate our food very quickly.

2 They often wrote nice thank you letters.

3 Luckily, she was a very friendly neighbour.

4 I always saw Maryam in the mornings.

5 He usually lived in that big house with his family.

6 We went to Shiraz last month but unfortunately the weather was not good.

7 Maria dances beautifully.

8 They spoke slowly and we understood well.

9 Did you call them immediately?

10 Fortunately, I had an umbrella.

Exercise 2

Identify the adverbs in the sentences that follow and then translate the sentences into English:

١ ناكَهان ساعت سه صبع بيدار شدم و آهسته از اتاق بيرون آمدم.

۲ او خیلی نگران بود.

۳ خوشبختانه زود به فرودگاه رسیدند.

۴ او هنوز در لندن است.

۵ ما دیشب خیلی دیر به خانه آمدیم.

۶ شما فقط ده دُلار دارید؟

٧ من غُذاى ايرانى دوست دارم، مخصوصاً باقالى پلو.

٨ آنوقت شب همهٔ رستوران ها بسته بودند.

٩ نامهٔ تو اقلاً سه روز پیش رسید.

۱۰ خانهٔ ما به پارک نزدیک است.



In this unit you will learn how to

- recognize and form other verb forms
- · use 'but'
- use 'other' with negative verbs

Dialogue

Listen to Maryam and Amir talking about their friends' living arrangements.

امیر خانهٔ جدید مینا را دیده ای؟	م
نه، خانهٔ جدید او را ندیده ام. مگر او با یاسمن و پر	i
زندگی نمی کرد؟	

نه مینا دیگر در آن خانه نیست. یاسمن برای یکسال به آلمان رفته است و پری پیش خانواده اش برگشته است.

يس مينا حالا كجاست؟

او یک اتاق در یک خانهٔ نو پیدا کرده است.

این خانه مال کیست؟

خانه مال خالهٔ یکی از دوستان میناست. ولی صاحبخانه و شوهرش در انگلستان زندگی می کنند و خانه را اجاره داده اند. تو این خانه را دیده ای؟

وقتی بچه بودم و به مدرسه می رفتم، هرروز از جلوی این خانه می گذشتم، چون این خانه و مدرسه ام هر دو در یک خیابان بود. داریوش و خواهرش چند هفته پیش با مینا به یک مهمانی در آن خانه رفته بودند.

این خانه کجاست و چند تا اتاق دارد؟

در خیابان فردوسی است.

کجای خیابان فردوسی؟ عموی من هم تا پارسال در خیابان فردوسی زندگی می کرد.

نزدیکِ سینما شهرِفرنگ، درست یک کوچه بالاتر از پیتزا پاتوق. پلاک ۱۹۸ خیابان فردوسی.

این خانه باغ هم دارد؟

یک باغچهٔ کوچولو دارد، ولی خیلی تمیز و جا دار است. سه تا اُتاق خواب بزرگ، دو تا حمام، یک سالن

و آشپز خانهٔ بزرگ و مجهز. به! به! پس امیدوارم که مینا هرچه زودتر یک مهمانی منزل مباركي بدهد و ما را هم دعوت بكند!

101

な

M	Amir, have you seen Mina's new house?		
A	No, I haven't seen her new house. Did she not use to live with Yasaman and Pari?		
M	No, she is no longer in that house. Yasaman has gone to Germany for a year and Pari has returned to her family.		
A	So where is Mina now?		
M	She has found a room in a new house.		
A	Whose house is this?		
M	The house belongs to the (maternal) aunt of one of Mina's friends. However, the owner and her husband live in the UK and has rented out the house.		
A	Have you seen this house?		
M	When I was little and used to go to school, I would pass by this house every day, because this house and my school were in the same street. A few weeks ago, Dariush and his sister went to a party in that house		
	with Mina.		
A	Where is this house and how many rooms does it have?		
M	It is in Ferdosi Avenue.		
A	Whereabouts in Ferdosi Avenue? My (paternal) uncle used to live in Ferdosi Avenue until last year.		
M	Near Shahr-e farang (lit. kaleidoscope) Cinema, exactly one side street up from Pizza Patoq (lit. pizza hangout). Number 198 Ferdosi Avenue.		
A	Does this house have a garden too?		
M	It has a small flower garden/patio, but it's very clean and spacious: three large bedrooms, two bathrooms, one drawing room and a large, well-equipped kitchen.		

Wow! I hope Mina gives a house-warming party very

Addition of the control of the contr

soon and invites us too!

new جُديد	school درسه
have you seen دیده ای	ای رَفتم I used to go
ا ندیده آم I have not seen	in front of, by
مگر but	ی گُذَشتَم I used to pass
نِندَگی نمی used not to live	because ون
کرد	درسه اُم my school
with negative verb دیگر no longer, no more	ر دو both of us
one year یاکسال	a few weeks بند همفته پیش
آلمان Germany	ago
STATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PA	party همانی
has gone رفته است	فته بودَند they had gone
to (used for people) پیشِ	where is it? است؟
her family أش خانواده أش	how many? أيند تا
has returned برگشته است	
now Yl=	where in? اي؟
room اُتاق	مو paternal uncle
she has found پیداکرده اُست	until, up to
	last year ارسال
owner, landlord/ صاحبخانه lady	بندگی می کرد used to live
husband شوهر	near to کردیک
her husband شوهرش	رُست exactly
they are living زندگی می	side street عوجه
كُننُد	further up
اجاره داده أند they have	lit. favourite meeting
rented out	place where people
have you seen? دیده ای؟	hang out; here, a name
when, at the time that وقتى	لاک plaque, door number
I was a child بَچِه بودم	198

garden	باغ	well equipped	مجهز
small garden	باغچِه	how lovely!	اهم! اهم!
tiny, very small	كوچولو	I hope	أميدوار
clean	تُميز	as soon as	هرچه زودتر
spacious	جادار	possible	
bedroom	أتاق خواب	house warming	منزِل مبارکی
bath, bathroom	حَمام	(subj.) that she g	ives بدهد
lit. salon, hall, big	سالُن room	us too	ماراهم
kitchen	آشپزخانه	(subj.) that she invites	دعوت بِكُنْد

103

Many of the verbs used in the dialogue are not the simple past tense verbs that we have seen in the previous units. The verbs refer to actions that had, for example, happened at some point in the past and their effects are either still relevant (such as 'she has found a room') or no longer relevant (such as 'went to a party'). These verbs are discussed in detail later in this unit.

But before we look at the variation on the past tense verbs, let us look at two other important and useful points.

Use of 'but' مگر , a conjunction question word

When the questioner uses the question word magar with a negative sentence, he or she expects the answer 'yes' and if a used in a positive sentence it indicates that he or she expects the answer 'no'.

آمگر شما علی را نمی شناسید؟ in a negative question: مگر شما علی را نمی شناسید؟ But don't you know Ali?' means that the questioner really expects the addressee to know Ali and to answer 'yes'. The 'yes' answer to these questions is not جرا bale, but بله cherā.

A positive sentence with مگر would be like this: so 'but does he have a lot of money?' The answer to this is expected to be 'no'. 'No, he doesn't have much money'.

With negative words دیگر Use of

دیگر digar 'other' acts as an adjective when it qualifies a noun and means 'other' or sometimes 'more' if it is used with a positive verb, such as 'I want the other book' or 'the other day' روز دیگر را می خواهم. However, if ن کتاب دیگر را می خواهم is used as an adverb with a negative verb it means 'no longer' or 'no more'.

. دیگر به لَندُن نَرَفتند. They no longer went to London. دیگر به لَندُن نَرَفتند. We have no more money. We no longer have money.

Forming the past continuous

In order to form the other past tense verbs in Persian you simply need to expand on the 'formula' that we used for the simple past tense which is: simple past = subject ending + past stem.

The next tense formed from the past stem is the *imperfect* or the past continuous. This refers to habitual actions in the past, such as 'I used to live near a lake', as well as actions that continued over a period of time or were in progress at some moment in the past such as 'I was walking along the road'.

Imperfect or past continuous (also known as habitual past in some books) is formed by adding the suffix and to the simple past: past continuous/imperfect = simple past + ...

Compare the two tenses given in the following example:

Simple past	Imperfect
I came آمدَم āmadam	می آمدَم mi āmadam I used to come, was coming
you came آمدی āmadai	می آمدی mi āmadai you used to come, were coming
he, she, it came آمد āmad	می آمد mi āmad he, she, it used to come, was coming

Simple past	Imperfect
we came آمديم āmadim	می آمدیم mi āmadim we used to come, were coming
you (pl.) came آمديد āmadid	می آمدید mi-āmadid you (pl.) used to come, were coming
they came آمدَند āmadand	می آمدَند mi āmadand they used to come, were coming

105

2

Here are some examples in use:

مريم هر سه شنبه به كلاس نقاشى مى رفت. maryam har seshambe be kelās-e naqqāshi miraft. Maryam used to go to painting class every Tuesday.

من تا سال ۱۳۷۲ در ایران زندگی می کردم. man tā sāl-e hezār o sisado haftādo do dar irān zendegi mikardam. I used to live in Iran until 1372.

وقتیکه جوان بودید تعطیلات کجا می رفتید؟

vaqtike javān budand ta'tilāt kojā miraftand?

Where did you use to go on holiday when you were young?

Note that the verbs 'to be' and 'to have' do not take the prefix in the past continuous tense.

Forming the perfect and pluperfect

The next group of verbs are compound forms that are made using the past participle, such as 'I have bought a very pretty hat' or 'I had seen that carpet in a shop in Kerman'. The first sentence refers to an action that was completed in the past while it maintains a link to the present time, i.e. the hat was purchased in the past tense but the sentence hints that the result of the purchase, i.e. the hat, is still very much around and part of the present time. The tense of the verb of this sentence is known as the perfect tense.

The second sentence, however, refers to an action that was

achieved at a point in the remote past and maintained some relevance for a time but it no longer has any bearing on the present time. This tense is known as the *pluperfect*. It could be said that the pluperfect is the past tense of the perfect tense.

Formation of both of these compound tenses requires what is referred to as the *past participle*. The past participle is then placed in the appropriate formulas for the construction of the perfect and pluperfect tenses.

The past participle is very easily formed. All we need to do is add a final ها ه h to the past stem, e.g. the verb 'to buy' is . The past stem of the verb, which if you recall is the same as the short infinitive, is formed by dropping the final ن an. Therefore the past stem of خرید is خریدن is kharid. The past participle is then formed by adding a ه h to this:

$$kharide$$
 bought خُريد + ه = خُريد $rafte$ gone رَفْتَن \rightarrow رَفْت + \rightarrow رَفْت $rafte$ gone رُفْت + \rightarrow روفت $rafte$ gone رفت $rafte$ رفت $rafte$ gone رفت $rafte$ gone $rafte$ $rafte$ gone $rafte$ $rafte$ gone $rafte$ $rafte$ $rafte$ $rafte$ gone $rafte$ $rafte$ $rafte$ gone $rafte$ r

پیشرفتن ← پیشرفت + ـه = پیشرفته pishrafte advanced, modern

Forming the perfect tense

The perfect (or past narrative tense as it is sometimes known) is formed by adding the short forms of the present tense of the verb 'to be' (those that are used after nouns ending in vowels) to the past participle: perfect tense = short forms of the verb 'to be' + past participle.

The short forms of the verb 'to be' will act as the subject endings of the verb, telling us who is the agent of the action. Do you remember what these short forms of to be are?

Singular	Plural
am I am لَم	im we are ايم
i you are ای	id you (pl.) are
ast he, she, it is اُست	and they are اُند

Using the formula we can work out what the Persian for 'I have gone' is:

107

have you seen Mina's new house?

The six cases of the perfect tense of 'to go' are shown in the following table:

Singular	Plural	
I have gone رَفْتِه لَم	we have gone رَفتِه ایم	
you have gone رَفتِه ای	you (pl.) have gone رَفْتِه ايد	
he, she, it has gone رَفته لَست	they have gone رَفتِه لَند	

The negative of this tense is formed by prefixing na ن to the participle: 'you (pl.) have not gone' = نَرفته ايد, 'I've not eaten' نگفته ای, 'you've not said' = نگفته ای

Uses of the perfect

The perfect tense expresses the present result of an action completed in the past:

مريم آمده است. Maryam has come. (i.e. she arrived, she is here)

They have آنها از منچستر آمده اند و امشب اینجا می مانند. arrived from Manchester and are spending the night here.

It can also indicate an action accomplished in an era considered as closed, for example talking about historical facts that are still relevant to today or speaking of long ago. In English, however, the simple past is the more commonly used tense for these instances:

. کورُوش پادشاه دادگری بوده است. Kurosh was a just king. (lit. has been a just king)

Forming the pluperfect

The pluperfect, also known as the *remote past*, is formed with the past participle followed by the simple past tense of the verb 'to be': pluperfect tense = simple past of 'to be' + past participle.

The six cases of the pluperfect of 'to buy' are shown in the following table:

Singular	Plural
I had bought خریده بودم	we had bought خریده بودیم
you had bought خریده بودی	you (pl.) had bought
he, she, it had bought خریده بود	they had bought خریده بودند

Uses of the pluperfect

The following examples demonstrate the use of the pluperfect in Persian:

When I arrived all of wy friends had gone.

این کتاب را سه سالِ پیش نوِشته بود. She had written this book three years ago.

. We had not seen him until today.

Note that in English the simple past may sometimes be used instead of the pluperfect.

Exercise 1

Translate the following into Persian:

- 1 Maryam is asleep in that room. (Note: Persian uses 'has slept' for the English present.)
- 2 We have never been (gone) to Iran.
- 3 You have lived in Africa before.
- 4 Their friends have arrived from Paris.
- 5 I have stayed in this small hotel.

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

۱ از دیروز تا حالا به اداره نیآمده است.
 ۱ از صبح تا حالا در پارک بوده ام.
 ۳ برای شام خوراک مرغ و سبزیجات پخته ایم.
 ۴ چند سال در ایران زندگی کرده اید؟
 ۵ آنها سه بار به اصفهان رفته اند.

109

2

Exercise 3

You have rung Ali at home to see if he is back from work as you wish to talk to him. Ali's wife, Nasrin, answers the phone. Can you follow the dialogue and provide the Persian translation of the English lines?

You Hello. Mr. Afshar's residence?

Nasrin بله، بفرمایید.
You Are you Miss Nasrin? I'm Pedram.

سلام پدرام خان، بله، نسرینم. حالتون چطوره؟ خوب هستید؟ Nasrin

خانم حالشان چطوره؟

You I am very well, thank you. My wife is well too. She is in

France at the moment. She is at her mother's.

برای چه مدت به فرانسه رفته اند؟ Nasrin

You She has gone for a week. She hasn't seen her mother for four months. Her brother has come over from the

States too. The whole family are there now.

چه عالی. جای بقیهٔ فامیل خالی. Nasrin

You Excuse me, is Ali at home?

بله، على تازه از اداره آمده است. پس از من خداحافظ. Nasrin

سلام برسانید.

Compounds sen ben ben error

You Bye for now. Hope to see you soon.

In this unit you will learn how to

- recognize and apply more verbs
- form and use compound verbs

Dialogue

Amir and Maryam talk about an invitation to supper at his house. Listen to the dialogue and pay special attention to the verbs:

آمیر، دیروز کُجا بودی؟
دیروز صبح در مغازه کار می کردم. بعد ساعت چهار به دیروز صبح در مغازه کار می کردم. بعد ساعت چهار به کتابخانه رفتم و تا ساعت شش و نیم آنجا درس خواندم. من، دیروز بعداز ظُهر به منزلت تلفن زدم و با مادرت حرف زَدَم. مادرت، من و خانواده ام را به شام دعوت کرد. چه خوب. کی برای شام پیشِ ما می آیید؟
سه شنبهٔ آینده می آییم. امیر مادرت چه گلی دو ست دارد؟
مادرم گلِ سرخ و لاله خیلی دوست دارد. وقتی در شیراز زندگی می کردیم باغِ ما پر از گلِ بود.
بسیار خوب، پس من چند شاخه گلِ سرخ و یک جعبه شیرینی برای او می آورم.

Amir, where were you yesterday? I was working in the shop yesterday morning. Then, at four o'clock I went to the library and studied there till 6.30. I called your house yesterday afternoon and spoke to your mother. Your mother invited me and my family to supper. How wonderful. When are you (pl.) coming to us for supper? We are coming next Tuesday. Amir, what flowers does M your mother like? My mother likes red roses and tulips. When we lived in Shiraz our house was full of flowers. OK, in that case I will bring her several stems of roses M and a box of chocolates.

yesterday	ديروز
morning	مبع
shop	مُغازه
I was working	کارمی کردکم
then, next	بعد سريد
four o'clock	ساعت چهار
library	كتابخانه
until, up to	. تا امر از ربا میان
6.30	شش و نیم
I studied	درس خواندم
afternoon	بعدارظهر
your house	مَنزِلَت مَنزِلَت
I telephoned	تلِفُن زَدَم
your mother	مادرت
I spoke	حَرف زُدَم
my family	خانواده ام
direct object marker	را د د د د د د
to	به
supper, dinner	شام
she invited	دُعوَت كرد
when?	کی؟
for	براي
you (pl.) come	می آیید
Tuesday	سِه شَنبِه
future, next	آیندِه
we will come	می آییم

flower (arch. roses)	گ ل گ
a flower	کُلی
she likes	حی دوست دارد
red, crimson	سُرخ
tulips	AJA
when, at the time that	وَقتى وَقتى
we lived	زِندِگی می کردیم
garden	باغ
full of	پُراَز
then, in that	پُس
several	چَند
branch, stem	شاخِه
box	جَعبِه
confectionery	شيرينى
for her (or him)	برای او
I will bring	مي آورَم

113

Compound verbs

The verbs کردم, 'I worked', کروم, 'I spoke or talked to', کوف زَدَم, 'she invited', حَرف زَدَم, 'she likes' and بندگی کردیم, 'we lived', used in the dialogue, are known as compound verbs. As you can see they contain a noun as well as the verb element. Compound verbs don't behave any differently from ordinary, single verbs. When we form the different tenses and persons of these verbs, we still only conjugate the verbal element and the noun component does not get changed in any way whatsoever. The infinitive of a compound verb can consist of a noun + verb or a preposition + verb as in the following examples:

زَندَگی کُردن (زندگی + کردن)	zendegi kardan	to live
زندگی	zendegi	life
كُردُن	kardan	to do
درس خواندن (درس + خواندن)	dars khāndan	to study
마음 집에 들어 들어 보니 아니는 아니는 아니는 아니는 아니는 아니는 아니는 아니는 아니다.	dars	lesson
خواندَن	khāndan	to read
برگشتن (بر + گشتن)	bar gashtan	to return,
		to turn back
بْر	bar	over, on, top
گشتن	gashtan	to go round,
		to search
(در + آوردن) در آوردن	dar āvardan	to get out,
	10 to	take out, earn
		(lit. fetch out
		from the inside)
دُر	dar	in, at, inside
آوَرِدَن	dar āvardan	to bring,
		to fetch

Single versus compound

Let us look at the formation of different tenses of a compound verb in comparison to a single verb. Let's take the verbs 'to live' and 'to go' and look at different forms of these verbs in the past tense.

Single verb 'to go'	Compound verb 'to live'
raftam I went رفتم	zendegi kardam I lived زندگی کردم
rafti you went رَفتي	zendegi kardi you lived زندگی کردی
raft he, she, it went رفت	zendegi kard he, she, it lived زندگی کرد
raftim we went	zendegi kardim we lived زندگی کردیم
رفتید raftid you (pl.) went	zendegi kardid you (pl.) lived
raftand they went	zendegi kardand they lived زندگی کردند

The noun or the preposition complement of a compound verb simply tags along as the appropriate tenses of the verb are formed. All particles, such as the negative in na- or the continuous prefix من mi-, are only ever fixed onto the verbal part of a compound verb and never onto the noun or preposition part. Therefore, the past continuous or habitual 'I used to live' will be زندگی می گردم یک کردم zendegi mi-kardam. Similarly, 'they did not live there' will be آنها آنها آنها زندگی نگردند anhā ānjā zendegi na-kardand.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 She lived in our house in Shiraz.
- 2 I used to study in the morning and work in the afternoon.
- 3 You (sing.) don't like our food, but you like our tea.
- 4 We listened to the radio this morning.
- 5 They thought today was Monday.
- 6 You were surprised when you saw Maryam.
- 7 He made a difficult decision.
- 8 Have you fixed the car?
- 9 I have not worked since Tuesday.
- 10 Amir and Maryam sang at Pari's wedding.

Some useful compound verbs

to listen	گوش دادن or گوش کردن
to think	فِكر كَردُن
to be surprised	تَعَجُب كردن
to decide (lit. take de	rcisions) كَرِفتَن
to fix, mend	دُرُست کردن
to work	کار کردن
to sing	آواز خواندن

13

115

Exercise 2

Translate the following passage into English, paying attention to the compound verbs:

ما سه سالِ پیش در شهر «بوردو» در فرانسه زندگی می کردیم.
پدرم در یک بانکِ تجاری کارمی کرد و مادرم در مدرسهٔ محلی
پیانو درس می داد. من در مدرسه با چند پسر و دختر ایرانی آشنا
شدم. ما آخرِهر هفته یا در کوچه ها دوچرخه سواری می کردیم یا
در استخر شنا میکردیم. مادر یکی از پسرهای ایرانی هر یکشنبه
برای ما شام درست می کرد. من غذای ایرانی خیلی دوست دارم.
اما کار پدرم در فرانسه تمام شد و ما امسال تابستان به لندن
برگشتیم.

Exercise 3

Use the Persian compound verbs 'to live', 'to work', 'to play', 'to speak' and 'to return' in this dialogue about your weekend:

شما آخر هفته چکار کردید؟ در لندن بودید؟

You No, I worked all Saturday morning, then in the evening I

went to my cousin's house by the lake.

آنجا چکار کردید؟ حتما شب دیر رسیدید؟

You No, I got there at about 9:30. We had supper and

talked a little and then went to bed.

یکشنبه چکار کردید؟

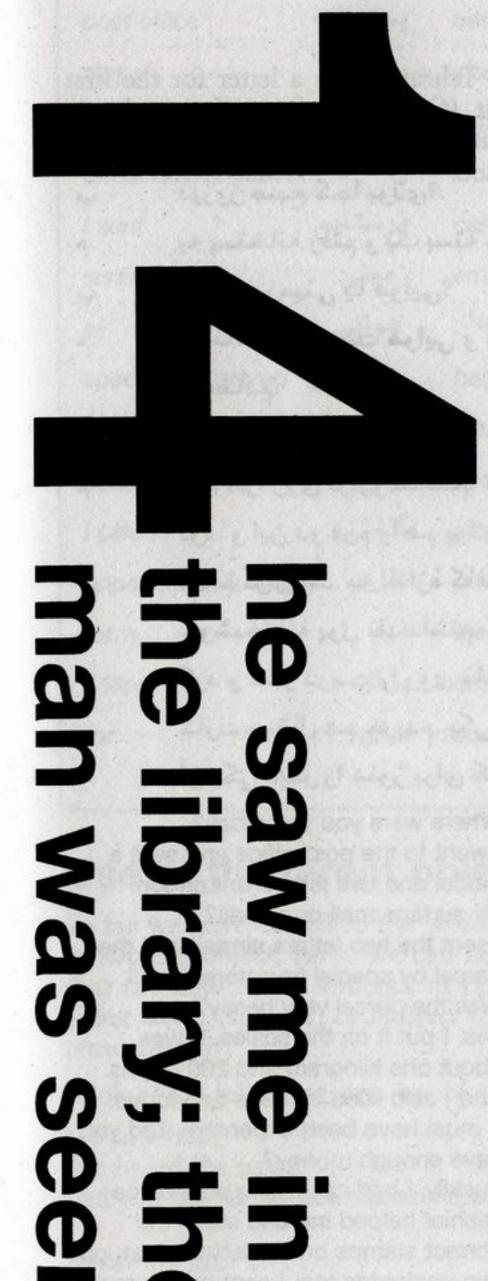
You On Sunday morning we went to a local market and

then played golf. I came back home at about 6pm.

پسرعموی شما تمام هفته آنجا زندگی میکند یا فقط

روزهای شنبه و یکشنبه؟

You My cousin lives there the whole time.



In this unit you will learn how to

- identify the direct object of verbs
- recognize and form transitive and intransitive verbs

Dialogue

Mona, a visiting student in Tehran, posts a letter for the first time and tells Parvin about it. (Can you pick out the word ra 1) used only in some of the sentences?)

ديروز صبح كجا بودى؟

به پستخانه رفتم و یک بسته و دو نامه را به لندن فرستادم.

با پست زمینی یا هوایی؟

دو نامه را با پست هوایی و بسته را با پست سفارشی فرستادم.

بسته خیلی سنگین بود؟

بله، آنرا روی ترازو گذاشتم. تقریباً یک کیلو و دویست گرم بود. و این دو فرم را هم پرکردم.

حتماً گران شد. به اندازهٔ کافی پول داشتی؟

خوشبختانه پول نقد داشتم. كارمند پستخانه به من كمك کرد و تمبر درست را روی نامه ها چسباند. من دو تا كارت پستال هم خريدم. يكي را براي مادرم فرستادم ولي

آن یکی دیگر را هنوز برای کسی نفرستاده ام.

Where were you yesterday? I went to the post office and sent a parcel and two letters to London.

By surface mail or airmail?

I sent the two letters airmail and the parcel by special (registered) mail.

Was the parcel very heavy?

Yes. I put it on the scales. It was about one kilogram and 200 grams. And I also filled in these two forms. It must have been expensive. Did you

have enough money?

Luckily, I had cash. The post office cashier helped me and stuck the correct stamps on the letters. I bought two postcards too. I sent one to my mother but I haven't sent the other one to anybody yet.



Mountain village of Masouleh

post office	پُستخانه	became, was	شُد
parcel	بُسته	size, amount	اَندازهٔ
letter	نامه	sufficient	کافی
direct object marker	را	luckily	خوشبختانه
I sent	فرستادم	cash	نَقد
surface, land	زمینی	employee,	كارَمند
air	هُوايي	here cashier	
special, registered	سفارشي	helped	کُمک کرد
heavy	سُنگین	stamp	تُمبرِ
scales	ترازو	correct, right, exa	
I placed	كُذاشتُم	stuck down	چُسباند
approximately, nearly	تُقريباً ٧	postcard	كارت پستال
form	فُرم	the other one	آن یکی دیگر
I filled	پُرکَردَم	still, as yet	هنوز
for	برای	someone, no one with negative ve	

119

Use of the direct object market rā 1,

So far we have described the word order in a Persian sentence as subject, object, verb. We can now expand on this and add that the object of a sentence in Persian, as in English, can be either direct (specific) or indirect (non-specific). What do these terms mean?

Look at the following two sets of sentences:

We saw him. She heard the news. Did you buy those new shoes yesterday?

I went by bus. He slept well in his bed. They came to London three years ago.

121

he saw me in the library; the man was seen

The objects in the first group of sentences (in bold) are specific persons or items directly referred to, while the objects of the second group of sentences (underlined) are unspecific. Also, the direct objects follow the English verbs in the first set of sentences but a preposition such as 'by', or 'in' or 'to' separates the indirect objects of the second set of sentences from the verb.

A specific or direct object is that part of the sentence which is the immediate objective or purpose of the verb or the action in the sentence, while an indirect object means that there is enough information in a verb already to illustrate an action, and the object, usually with the aid of a preposition, gives further information about the action referred to and how it is related to the verb.

Writing rules

In Persian, when a definite noun, i.e. a noun as it appears in the dictionary, is the immediate and direct object of the verb, it has to be 'marked'. The marker is a suffix or postposition that comes immediately after the direct object. The direct object marker is 1, rā in Persian. The direct object can be simply one word, a string of words or it can be a whole sub-clause. J rā always comes at the end of the entire group of words that make up the object of the verb.

Learning how and where to use of the more difficult aspects of Persian grammar, especially for speakers of modern European languages, where the equivalent of ra does not exist.

While you will have no problems translating a Persian sentence containing a direct object into English, because the marker I, ra is there to be seen, you must make extra sure to remember to put a rā in, if necessary, when translating from English into Persian.

Types of verb: transitive or intransitive?

How will you know when a sentence requires 1, ra? The direct object of a sentence usually needs to be marked by the suffix 1, rā if the verb of the sentence is transitive. Therefore, before starting on the examples of I, in Persian, we should perhaps learn how to identify a transitive verb. Fortunately, transitive and intransitive verbs are the same in Persian and English.

It is safe to say that a verb is either transitive or intransitive, although there are a very few verbs that can be described as both transitive and intransitive. A transitive verb is one that can take a direct object: e.g. the verbs 'to buy', 'to see', 'to bring', 'to read' and 'to deliver'. The main object of these types of verb has to be followed by J. Transitive verbs can be directly linked to their main objects as in 'I saw the photographs and heard the music', where the photographs is the direct object of the verb saw and the music is the direct object of heard.

An intransitive verb, contrariwise, is a verb that never takes a direct object. Verbs such as 'to go', 'to sit', 'to sleep', 'to live', and 'to be' are examples of intransitive verbs. These verbs never need 13; however, they often need a preposition, such as 'to go to the cinema', 'to sit on a bench' so that the purpose of the action is further clarified. The intransitive verb is not linked directly to its objects, but the preposition that comes in between may relate it to the object, i.e. you cannot 'go the cinema', 'sleep the train' or 'sit the comfortable chair'.

You can assume that unless the sentence has a transitive verb in it you don't need to worry about putting a l, ra in after its object when you translate it into Persian. But how can you tell if a verb is transitive or intransitive?

Here is a simple way of working this out. If you turn around and say to someone: 'I saw' and leave it at that, the question they are most likely to ask you to find out more is: 'You saw what?' or 'Whom did you see?' Similarly, if you say: 'Maryam bought', without elaborating further, the listener is likely to ask: 'What did Maryam buy?' However, if you say 'we sat', or 'they went', the question words that the listener will use to get more information won't be 'what' or 'whom', but he or she may ask: 'Where did you sit'; 'Why did you sit' or 'When did they go' and 'How did they go'? No one ever asks, 'What did you sit?' or 'Who did they go?' unless they then add a preposition and turn the questions into: 'What did you sit on?', or 'Whom did they go with?'. Without adding the prepositions 'on' and 'with' to the last two questions the sentences 'What did you sit?' or 'Who did they go?' make no sense.

Only verbs that can be sensibly used with interrogatives (question words) 'what' and 'who/whom' are transitive verbs and their objects, in Persian, are almost always followed by I rā. The verbs that cannot fit into a 'what' or 'who/whom' question sentence without the need for a preposition such as 'by', 'to', 'on', 'from' etc., are intransitive and as a rule do not take the 1, rā in modern Persian.

Example

Let us work this out by way of an example. Look at the following two sentences:

- (a) Ali saw his brother.
- (b) Maryam went to the park.

Now make question sentences using only the 'what' or 'who/whom' question words:

- (a) What or whom did Ali see?
- (b) What or whom did Maryam go?

As you see, question sentence (a) makes sense but question (b) is nonsensical. The verb 'to see' is *transitive* and therefore responds to a 'who/whom' or 'what' question, while the verb 'to go' is *intransitive* and does not work out with these question words.

Having established the nature of the verb, we will next try to find out what the specific direct object of the verb 'to see' is in sentence (a). The direct object is always the answer to the question we form, i.e. 'his brother' (Whom did Ali see? Ali saw his brother (pick).

The specific direct object of the sentence is then followed by in Persian.

على برادرش را ديد.

Very soon you will build up a vocabulary list of both transitive and intransitive verbs in Persian and will automatically work out if your Persian sentence containing these transitive verbs needs a 1, rā or not.

When to use rā 1, with transitive verbs

Here are more guidelines for when to use I, rā in Persian.

Always use rā 1

(i) After all proper nouns, such as Maryam or London:

﴿ الْ الْمُعْمُ اللَّهُ وَ اللَّهُ اللَّاللَّ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ

(ii) After all personal and demonstrative pronouns, such as 'I', 'you', 'he', 'they' or 'this', 'that' and 'it':

123

saw me in the library;

man was seen

من را در کتابخانه دید – مرا در کتابخانه دید. *man rā dar* ketābkhāne did. She (or he) saw me in the library.

. تورانمی شناسم to rā nemishenāsam. I don't know you.

ابک آن را به من داد. Bābak ān rā be man dād. Babak gave it (lit. that) to me.

(iii) After all nouns described by demonstrative adjectives or by the possessive ezafe:

. قانه را ديدم ān khāne rā didam. I saw that house

.خانهٔ او را دیدم khāneh-ye u rā didam. I saw his or her house.

ما را خواندم. ketāb-hā-ye shomā rā khāndam. I read your books.

أن خُبر را نَشنيدُم. an khabar rā nashenidam. I have not heard that news.

(iv) When personal suffixes refer to individuals and thus specific persons:

كتابم را برد. ketābam rā bord. S/he took (away) my book. في المنش را نشنيدم. esmash rā nashenidam. I did not hear her/his name.

Summary

Direct objects of transitive verbs are always followed by I.

Intransitive verbs, however, do not take a specific direct object, and therefore never come with I. The bridge between the object of the sentence and the verb is usually a preposition. Look at these examples:

ا کتاب فارسی را به کلاس آوردم. brought the Persian book to the class.

ا دوست مریم را در مهمانی دیدم. I saw Maryam's friend at the party.

Hasan went to the cinema last night. حسن دیشب به سینما رفت. This afternoon I امروز عصر، دو ساعت در پارک راه رَفتَم. walked in the park for two hours.

Once you get used to the idea of an object marker in Persian, you will be able to make the final leap in this chapter and learn that there are instances when the object or purpose of transitive verbs is not followed by a l_j rā. Don't be deceived into thinking that because the sentence has a transitive verb ('to buy' or 'to hear') then there must be a l_j in there somewhere! You must always think about the meaning of the sentence and also look for the other giveaway clues listed in points (i) to (iv) earlier.

Look at the following sentences:

1 سوسن كتاب را خريد. Sussan bought the book.

2 سوسن كتاب خريد. Sussan bought books.

Although the verb 'to buy' is a transitive verb and therefore capable of having a specific direct object, it has only done so in sentence 1. Here, 'the book' is a definite noun and the immediate object of the verb is the purchase of a specific book.

In sentence 2, however, the emphasis is on the *action* and on the activities of the agent, Sussan, who is the doer of the verb, and not on the verb's object. The message of this sentence is that Sussan bought books in general as opposed to, for example, 'sat in a café while she was at a conference in Tehran' or 'bought decorative tiles on a visit there'.

You will also notice that none of the earlier guidelines (i) to (iv) applies to sentence 2.

If a noun is followed by a modifier, the post position is placed after the entire group, even if it is long:

.saw Hasan حَسن را ديدم.

.saw Hasan's house خانهٔ حسن را دیدم.

.saw Hasan's friend's house خانهٔ دوست حسن را دیدم.

ا خانهٔ دوستِ آلمانیِ حَسَن را دیدم. I saw Hasan's German friend's house.

ان کتابِ خیلی گران را خرید. He bought that very expensive book.

Do you (sing.) شماره تلفُن مغازهٔ دُخترخالهٔ مَریم را داری؟ have the telephone number of Maryam's cousin's shop?

125

he saw me in the I the man was seen

When two or more nouns are objects of the same verb, the particle I appears but once - at the end of the entire group:

ا خانه و باغ حسن را دیدم. I saw Hasan's house and garden, ا ان کتاب گران و این گُلدان را خریدم. bought that expensive book and this vase.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 I heard his voice.
- 2 My friend bought these books from the shop.
- 3 They brought the parcel to our house.
- 4 She gave these flowers to her.
- 5 I didn't see Maryam's mother yesterday.
- 6 We ate all those apples.
- 7 I took some food for him.
- 8 She gave it to her brother.
- 9 I saw you in the bakery yesterday. What did you buy?
- 10 Didn't you want this book?
- 11 Have you seen my friend?
- 12 I don't know them.
- 13 Have you heard the news?
- 14 I want the other car.
- 15 Who brought these flowers?
- 16 I gave your address to the students.
- 17 I ate well yesterday.
- 18 I ate at your sister's yesterday.
- 19 I ate the chocolate in the fridge.
- 20 Did you like the film?

Exercise 2

Listen to the following text being read. Now translate it into English:

سه سالِ پیش در یک مهمانی در لندن با یک دُخترِ ایرانی آشنا شُدم. نام او مریم است. مریم عکاس است و روزهای سه شنبه و چهارشنبه در یک اِستودیوی عکاسی کار می کند. مریم خیلی سفر می کند و اورا زیاد نمی بینم.

دیروز، پس از مُدتها او را در یک مهمانی، در خانه دوستم دیدم. پس از احوالپرسی و خوش و بِشِ معمول گفت که خانه اش را عوض کرده و حالا در غَربِ لندن زندگی می کند. او گفت آپارتمانِ جدیدش را خیلی دوست دارد. مریم آدرس و شماره تلفن جدیدش را به من داد. این آپارتمان را مریم و دوستش اُمید، با هم پیدا کردند. اُتاق ها را رَنگ زدند، موکتِ آن را عوض کردند، آشپَزخانه را تَمیزکردند و

در باغچهٔ کوچکِ آن گل کاشتند. پنجرهٔ حمام شکسته بود و آنرا هم در باغچهٔ کوچکِ آن گل کاشتند. پنجرهٔ حمام شکسته بود و آنرا هم درست کردند. بعد، اسباب های مریم را به این آپارتمان آوردند. اُمید

هم در مهمانی بود و مریم او را به من مُعرفی کرد. مریم و اُمید

ماشینشان را نیاورده بودند و بعد از شام من آنها را به منزل

رساندم.

Exercise 3

Last week you bought a book for a friend but she already has it, so you must go back to the bookshop to return it. The English part of the dialogue is your cue. Can you say these sentences in Persian and work out what is being said in Persian?

You Good morning, madam. I bought this book last

Thursday. It was for a friend but she already has this

book.

کتاب را از این کتابفروشی خریدید؟ Assistant

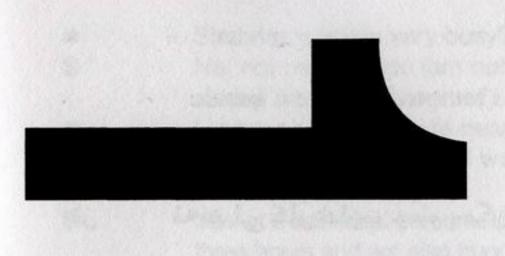
You Yes, I bought it from here.

متاسفانه ما نمیتوانیم پول کتاب را پس بدهیم

ولی میتوانید آنرا عوض کنید و یک کتاب دیگر بخرید.

You OK. In that case I'll exchange it with these two books,

and I also want this book on Iran. How much is it?





going for a quick snack

In this unit you will learn how to

- · form the present tense
- talk about what is happening now

Dialogue

In this dialogue Shahriar is tempted to take a break:

شهریار، خیلی کار داری؟

نه خیلی کار ندارم، چطور مگر؟ m

یک کافهٔ خیلی قشنگ نزدیک اینجا می شناسم. من، گاهی، به آنجا می روم و چیزی می خورم. برویم آنجا و چیزی بخوریم؟

بد فکری نیست. من دو سه ساعت بیکارم وگرسنه هم m هستم. با تو یک قهوه ای می خورم.

قهوهٔ این کافه در تمام لندن معروف است. کیک و شیرینیهایش هم، خانگیست و خیلی خوشمزه است. آب میوه های خیلی تازه هم دارد.

خوب، پس من به جای قهوه آب میوه می خورم. چه جور آب میوه هایی دارد؟

هر جور میوه ای که در بازار هست. تمام میوه ها را می گذارند توی یک سبد بزرگ. تو میوه را انتخاب می کنی و آنها همانجا برای تو آب می گیرند.

تو چه میخوری؟

من يا شيركاكائو با كيك مي خورم يا بستني.

این کافه ساندویچ هم دارد؟

بــله. همه جور ساندویچ دارد. ساندویچ مرغ، پنیر، ماهی تُن، كالباس، تُخم مرغ.

پس من یک ساندویچ مرغ و سالاد با یک لیوان آب انار مي خورم. Shahriar, are you very busy?

No, not much to do (am not very busy), why are you asking (lit. but how come?)

I know a very nice café near here. I sometimes go there and eat something. Shall we go there and eat something?

129

going for a

quick snack

15

It's not a bad idea. I am free (lit. without job) for two or three hours and am also hungry. I'll have a coffee with you.

The coffee in this café is famous throughout London. Its cakes and pastries are also home-made and very delicious. It has very fresh fruit juices too.

OK, I'll have (lit. eat) fruit juice instead of coffee. What sort of juices does it have?

Any fruit that is in the market. They put all the fruit in a large basket. You choose the fruit and they 'juice it' for you there and then.

What will you have (lit. eat)?

I'll either have hot chocolate with cake or an icecream.

Does this café do sandwiches?

Yes, all sorts of sandwiches: chicken, cheese, tuna, garlic sausage, egg.

So, I'll have a chicken and salad sandwich and a glass of pomegranate juice.

you are busy	کارداری	a thought, an idea فكرى
to be busy, have	کار داشتن	a bad idea or thought بد فکری
things to do		دو سه ساعت two or three
idiomatic why?	چطور مگر	hours
why do you ask?	and the same of	ا am free (lit. بیکارکم (بیکار
I know	می شناسم	without job, (هستم
sometimes	گاهی	preoccupation)
l go	می رُوم	گرُسنه hungry
something	چیزی	یک قهوه ای spoken) a coffee) یک
I eat	می خورم	all of the تُمامِ
let us go	برويم	مُعروف famous
AND ASSESSED AND OWNER.	بخوريم	خانگی home-made
let us eat		خوشمزه delicious, tasty
thought, idea	فكر	delicious, lasty

fruit juice	آب میوه		آب می گیرند
fresh	تازه	the juice	
instead of	به جای	will you eat?	می خوری؟
what kind?,	چه جور؟	either or	يا يا
sort?	kupitar Jih Kara	icecream	بُستَنى
all sorts, kinds	هُر جور	bird, hen, chicken	مُرغ
that	که	cheese	پَنیر
they place, put	می گذارَند	tuna fish	ماهى تُن
inside, into	توی	garlic sausage	كالباس
basket	سَبِدَ	eggs	تُخمِ مُرغ
يُنى you choose	انتخاب می ک	glass, tumbler	ليوان
there (and then)	هُمانجا	pomegranate juice	آب اُنار

Forming the present tense

Persian verbs fall into two categories: regular and irregular. This should not come as too much of a surprise for speakers of English as many common English verbs are also irregular. Just look at these examples:

eat	eaten	win	won
meet	met	do	done
drink	drunk	fly	flown
buy	bought	have	had

The irregularity of a Persian verb does not affect its formation in past tenses and, as we have seen, you can easily extract the 'past stem' of any Persian verb from its infinitive by dropping the ending : -an. The irregularity of some Persian verbs, however, means that extracting the 'present stem' is a little more difficult.

With regular verbs, all you have to do is to drop the complete ending of the infinitive, i.e. drop either the تن -tan, دن -dan or -idan and what you are left with is the present stem. But how can you tell a regular Persian verb from an irregular one when you have just started learning the language? Well, I'm

afraid, you can't. I can tell you that almost all infinitives that end in يدن -idan are regular and almost all infinitives ending in -tan are irregular. Infinitives ending in in -dan are sometimes regular and sometimes irregular. What you can also do is to use the table of common irregular verbs (in Unit 16). If your infinitive is not listed in this table it means that the verb you are looking for is regular and you simply drop the full ending of the infinitive to arrive at the required present stem. You will be surprised how quickly you will come to learn a lot of the common, irregular present stems by heart and you will need to use the table less and less.

131

going for a quick snack

Once you have extracted the present stem, all you need to do is to use a simple formula to form your present indicative tense, i.e. the simple present tense. This simple formula is: present indicative= subject (personal) verb endings + present stem + ...

Let's work out the various components in this formula:

• مى -mi, known also as the continuous marker, giving the sense of an ongoing or prevalent action; is the non-removable part of all present tense verbs in Persian with the exception of 'to be' and 'to have'. (I hope you still remember that 'to be' and 'to have' are irregular and do not always comply by rules that apply to other verbs!)

• The present stem can be found either by looking up in the

table or by dropping the full ending

 Appropriate subject endings for present tense verbs include the five endings which we have been using for the past tense verbs plus one extra ending for the third person singular, i.e. for 'he', 'she', 'it', 'this' and 'that'.

These subject endings, which tell you who the agent or the doer of the verb is, are shown in the following table:

Singular	Plural
am I	im we
i you	id you
ad he, she, it	ندand they

Note that the only difference between subject endings for past and present tenses is the extra ending for third person singular in present tense formation, shown in bold in the table.

خریدن Example 1: the present tense of 'to buy' kharidan

The verb 'to buy' is a regular verb in Persian and therefore its present stem is formed by dropping the full ending of the infinitive, which means deleting -idan. This leaves -idan as the 'present stem'.

Inputting the information in the formula: present tense = subject endings + خُر :

Singular	Plural
می خرم mikharam I buy	mikharim we buy
می خری mikhari you buy	mikharid you buy می خرید
mikharad he, she, it buys می خرد	mikharand they buy

رَفتن Example 2: the present tense of 'to go' raftan رُفتن

'To go' is an irregular verb in Persian, therefore we can refer to our table of irregular verbs and we will see that the irregular stem of this verb is irregular.

Using the present tense formula: present tense = subject endings + رَو +

Singular	Plural
می رَوَم miravam I go	می رَویم miravim we go
می روی miravi you go	می روید miravid you go
miravad he, she, it goes می رود	مى روَند miravand they go

Uses of the present tense

This is the tense of action happening in the present time, e.g. 'I am writing letters' or 'they are working':

I am writing letters. نامه می نویسم.

They are working.

It also refers to habitual actions, e.g. 'He buys a newspaper every day', 'we never eat breakfast':

133

going for a quick snack

5

او) هر روز یک روزنامه می خرد. He buys a newspaper everyday.

. We never eat breakfast ما هيچوقت صبحانه نمى خوريم.

Similarly, present tense is used when describing an action that was started in the past but continues in the present time:

ا بيست سال است رُكسانا را مى شناسم. I have known Roxana for 20 years. (Lit. It is 20 years that I know Roxana.)

I have been in Iran for أز ورود من به ايران پنج ماه مى گذرد. I have been in Iran for five months. (Lit. Five months pass since my arrival in Iran.)

Persian also allows you to use the present tense to refer to an action happening in the future. This is particularly so in spoken Persian:

فردا عصر به شیراز می روند. Tomorrow afternoon, they are going to Shiraz.

. سالِ دیگر یک ماشینِ نو می خریم. Next year we will buy a new car.

Exercise 1

Translate into Persian. Remember that some verbs may have a specific direct object.

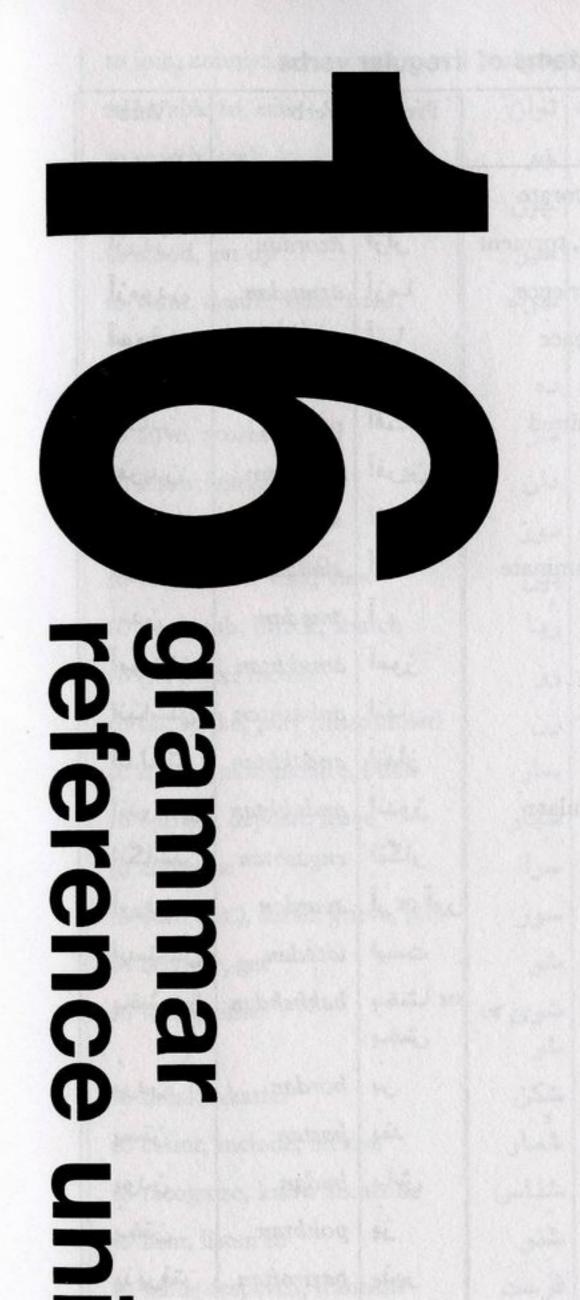
- 1 I go to my mother's house every Saturday and take her to the supermarket.
- 2 She lives in a nice, large flat with two cats.
- 3 Every morning we see your cousin on the bus.
- 4 Are you (sing.) writing a letter to Maryam?
- 5 They are coming to our party on Wednesday.

Exercise 2

From the following table match the present tense and past tense verbs that have the same infinitive.

Present tense	Past tense	
می گویم	خريديم	
می روید	آمدند	
می نشینیم	ماندی	
می گیرم	گفتم	
می خوری	رفت	
می آیند	نوشتند	
می مانند	گرفتید	
می څرد	نشست ا	
می آوری	خورديم	
می نویسند	ديدم	
می بینم	آوردی	

ting the your family a guiding Land boy said to



alleis semidabras assiss aleisi mandabang pist

Table of present stems of irregular verbs

Translation	Present	Verb	Verb
	stem		
to arrange, adorn, decorate	آرا	ārāstan	آراستن
to offend, vex, molest, torment	آزار	āzordan	آزُردن
to test, examine, experience	آزما	āzmudan	آزمودن
to rest, repose, find peace of mind	آسا	āsudan	آسودن
to fall, happen, be omitted	اُفت	oftādan	أفتادن
to create	آفرین	āfaridan	آفریدن
to increase, add	أفزا	afzudan	ا فزودن
to pollute, taint, contaminate	آلا	āludan	آلودن
to come, arrive	ĩ	āmadan	آمدن
to learn	آموز	āmukhtan	آموختن
to hoard, to store	انبار	anbāshtan	أنباشتن
to drop, throw	أنداز	andākhtan	أنداختن
to save, amass, accumulate	أندوز	andukhtan	أندوختن
to assume, suppose	انگار	engāshtan	انگاشتن
to bring, fetch	آر or آور	āvardan	آوردن
to stand up, stop	ایست	idtādan	ایستادن
to bestow, give	رِخشا or	bakhshdan	بخشودن
	بخش		
to take, carry away	بر	bordan	بردن
to tie up, close	بَند	bastan	بستن
to be	باش	budan	بودن
to cook, to bake	پُز	pokhtan	پُختن
to accept, agree	پذیر	paziroftan	پذیرفتن
to pay, devote time	پرداز	pardākhtan	پُرداختن
to suppose, imagine	پندار	pendāshtan	پنداشتن

to join, connect	پیوَند	peyvastan	پیوستن
to be able to, can	تُوان	tavānestan	تُوانِستن
to search, seek, look for	جو	jostan	جُستن
to cut, pick, display, lay out	چين	chidan	چیدن
to stand, get up	خيز	khāstan	خاستن
to want, desire, wish, need, be about to do sth	خواه	khāstan	خواستن
to give, pay, offer	ده	dādan	دادن
to have, possess, hold	دار	dāshtan	داشتن
to know, understand	دان	dānestan	دانستن
to sew, stitch	دوز	dukhtan	دوختن
to see, realize, visit, view	بین	didan	ديدن
to steal, rob, hijack, snatch	رُيا	robudan	ريودن
to go, leave, move	رو	raftan	رُفتن
to hit, strike, play (instrument)	نُن	zadan	زدن
to make, manufacture, build	ساز	sākhtan	ساختن
to entrust, deposit, leave	سپار	sepordan	سپردن
to compose	سُرا	sorudan	سرودن
to burn (int.), suffer, grieve, pity	سوز	sukhtan	سوختن
to become, get	شو	shodan	شُدن
to wash, rinse	شوى or شو	shostan	شُستن
to break, shatter	شکن	shekastan	شكستن
to count, include, reckon	شُمار	shomordan	شُمُردن
to recognize, know someone	شناس	shenākhtan	شِناختن
to hear, listen to	شنو	shenidan	شِنيدن
to send, despatch, transmit	فرست	ferestādan	فرستادن
to order, command, say (formal)	فرما	farmudan	فرمودن
to sell	فُروش	forukhtan	فروختن

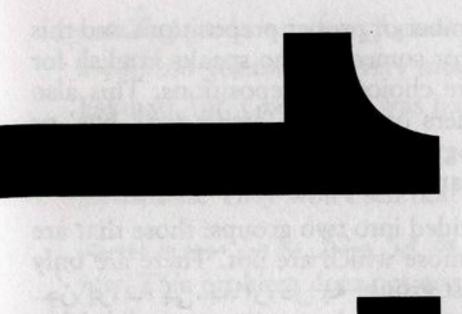
137

			,
to squeeze, apply pressure	فِشار	feshordan	فِشردن
to sow, cultivate, plant	کار	kāshtan	كاشتن
to do, complete	كُن	kardan	كُردن
to place, put; allow, let	گذار	gozāshtan	گذاشتن
to pass, cross; forgive; give up	گُذَر	gozashatan	گُذَشتن
to take, grab; seize; block	گیر	raftan	گرِفتن
to flee, escape, run away	گُريز	rikhtan	گُريختن
to weep, cry	گری	geristan	گریستن
to turn; walk about; seek	گرد	gashtan	گشتن
to open (door, exhibition, etc.)	كُشا	goshudan	گُشودن
to say, utter, tell, speak	گو	goftan	گفتن
to die, pass away, perish	میر	mordan	مُردن
to sit, land, perch, reside	نِشين	neshastan	نِشستن
to play (instrument)	نُوا	navākhtan	نواختن
to write, jot down	نِویس	neveshtan	نِوِشتن
to place	نِه	nahādan	نِهادن
to find, locate	ياب	yāftan	يافتن
	The second second second	ENCOMPANY OF THE RESERVE AND	

ALL Short Ball To PERSON

AND REPORT OF THE PARTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PAR

Although White and Street House Law





Tha huff, Though the

In this unit you will learn how to

- use prepositions ('at', 'to', 'from', 'by', etc.)
- put prepositions into idiomatic use

and the state of t

Persian has only a small number of proper prepositions and this can cause some confusion for someone who speaks English for example, which offers more choice of prepositions. This also explains why Iranian learners of English 'arrive with bus' or 'leave something behind in granny's': the prepositions 'by' and 'with' are the same in Persian, as are 'in' and 'at'.

Persian prepositions are divided into two groups: those that are followed by the *ezafe* and those which are not. There are only eight prepositions in the first group: جُن بَر، تا، بي، با، اَن در، به , are explained in detail here, with examples of their use.

Prepositions that don't take the ezafe

be 'to', 'in', 'into', 'at', 'on', 'with'

This is used in a variety of contexts but predominantly with verbs that are concerned with direction or location and would normally take a 'to', 'at' or 'in' preposition in English. It covers motion towards in a figurative sense. It is also used with adverbs of manner and in oaths.

(Note the necessity of use of prepositions in Persian and its occasional absence in the English translation.)

رفتیم. dishab be cinemā raftim. Last night we went to the cinema.

این کتاب را به مریم داد. in ketāb rā be maryam dād. He/she gave this book to Maryam.

به در زد و وارد شد. be dar zad va vāred shod. He knocked (lit. on the door) and came in.

مريم و برادرش به آنها كُمك كُردند. maryam va barādarash be ānhā komak kardand. Maryam and her brother helped them.

آیا فردا به خانهٔ ما میآیی؟ āyā fardā be khāneh-ye mā mi'āyi? Will you come to our house tomorrow?

امروز به همكارم تلفن مى كنم. emruz be hamkāram telefon mi-konam. I will call my colleague today. (Lit. I will make a telephone call to my colleague today.)

در اصفهان خیلی به ما خوش گذشت. dar esfahān kheyli be mā khosh gozasht. We very much enjoyed ourselves in Esfahan. (lit. Good time was had by us in Esfahan)

141

قروشند. قالیچه را به ما نمی فروشند. an qāliche rā be mā nemiforushand. They won't sell that (small) carpet to us.

in moshkel be man marbut این مُشکل به من مَربوط نیست. in moshkel be man marbut nist. This problem does not concern me. (It's none of my business or no concern to me)

. خواهش مىكنَم به فارسى بنويسيد khāhesh mi-konam be fārsi benevisid. Please, write it (pl.) in Persian.

المحتى بيدا كرديم. تاريك بود ولى هُتل را به راحتى بيدا كرديم. hotel rā be rāhti peydā kardim. It was dark but we found the hotel easily (lit. in comfort, with ease).

بهرام به دست و دلبازی معروف است. Bahrām be dast o delbāzi ma'ruf ast. Bahram is known for (his) generosity (lit. for his open hand and heart)

نر dar 'in', 'at', 'into', 'by', 'of'

This preposition is used to describe an area:

خواهر مریم در لندن زندگی می کند. khāhar-e maryam dar landan zendegi mi-konad. Maryam's sister lives in London.

نر تابستان dar tabestan in the summer

امروز صبح، در فكر تو بودم. emruz sobh dar fekr-e to budam. Í was thinking of you this morning.

(Note: You can use the preposition به here too and say: امروز صبح به فكر تو بودم.

رومی، شاعر ایرانی، در اروپا و آمریکا خیلی طرفدار دارد. shā'er-e irāni, dar orupā va āmrikā kheyli tarafdār dārad. Rumi, the Iranian poet, has a big (lit. very) following in Europe and in America.

بو in āpārtemān shesh metr dar chahār ast. The kitchen in this flat is six metres by four.

142 in a huff, through the door

ن az 'from', 'by', 'through', 'of', 'than', 'among', 'by way of', 'out of', 'about'

is used to express comparison, to denote direction or commencement of time and journey, to give an idea of distance, material make-up of something, causes or partition:

az in kuche be ba'd از این کوچه به بعدیارکینگ مجانی است. pārking majāni ast. Parking is free beyond (lit. from this street onwards) this street.

az sobh, sā'at-e از صبح ساعت هشت منتظر شما بوده ام. hasht, montazer-e shomā bude-am. I have been waiting for you since 8 o'clock this morning.

'dars-e mā az fardā shoru درس ما از فردا شروع مى شود. mishavad. Our lessons will start from tomorrow.

in khāne az ājor sākhte این خانه از آجر ساخته شده است. shode ast. This house is made (lit. built) of brick.

an mojassame az marmar آن مجسمه از مرمر است یا از برنز؟ ast ya boronz? Is that statute (made) of marble or bronze?

بابک در خانه اش یک سگ بزرگ دارد و من از ترس آن سگ bābak dar khāneh-ash yek هيچوقت به خانهٔ او نمى روم. sag-e bozorg dārad va man az tars-e ān sag hichvaqt be khāne-ye u nemiravam. Babak has a large dog in his house and I never go to his house because of the fear of that dog (because I am so fearful of that dog).

u az ghosse bimār shode ast. او از غصه بیمار شده است. He has become sick because of sorrow.

همسایه ما خیلی از فیلم جدید جیمز باند تعریف می کرد. hamsāye-ye mā kheyli az film-e jadid-e jaims bānd ta'rif mikard. Our neighbour was full of praise of (lit. was very complimentary about) the new James Bond movie.

mādar-e maryam az مادر مريم از همكار من خوشش نمى آيد. hamkār-e man khoshash nemi-āyad. Maryam's mother does not like (lit. draws no liking from) my colleague.

mā dishab dir-vaqt az ما دیشب دیروقت از کرمان رسیدیم. kermān rasidim. We got back late from Kerman last night.

143

khānevāde-ye man az kāshān خانواده من از كاشان مي آيند. mi-āyand. My family come from Kashan.

u az khānevāde-ye bozorgi ast. او از خانوادهٔ بزرگی است. He comes (lit. is) from a large family.

ān naqqāshi az kamāl ol-molk آن نقاشي از كمال الملك است. ast. That painting is by Kamal ol-Molk.

an dāstān az yek آن داستان از یک نویسندهٔ جوان است. nevisande-ye javān ast. That story is by a young writer.

az shahr-hā-ye از شهرهای ایران کدام را بیشتر دوست دارید؟ iran kodam ra bishtar dust darid? Which one of the Iranian cities (lit. among Iranian cities or of all Iranian cities...) do you like most?

Different word order for this example can be: کدامیک از شهرهای ایران را بیشتر دوست دارید؟

از خواهرهای علی کدام در تهران به دانشگاه رفته اند؟ az khāhar-hā-ye ali kodām dar tehrān be dāneshgāh rafteand? Which one of Ali's sisters has gone to university in Tehran?

in jāru این جاروبرقی خراب شده است، از آن استفاده نکنید. barqi kharab shode ast, az an estefade nakonid. This (electric) vacuum cleaner is broken down, do not use it (lit. make no use of it).

chand māh ast ke az چند ماه است که از برادرم خبر ندارم. barādaram khabar nadāram. It's a few months since I had any news of my brother. (Lit. it is a few months that I have no news of my brother.)

-tond naro! az maghāze تند نرو! از مغازهٔ گلفروشی رد شدیم. ye gol-forushi rad shodim. Don't go fast! We passed the flower shop.

این حرف را از عصبانیت زدم. in harf rā az 'asabāniyat zadam. I said this out of anger.

دوستم از من بهتر فارسى حرف مى زند. dustam az man behtar farsi harf mizanad. My friend speaks better Persian than me.

جلوگیری از زلزله ممکن نیست. jelogiri az zelzele momken nist. It's impossible to prevent earthquakes (lit. prevention of is impossible).

Note: The following are compounds made with J.

'before', 'prior to' قبل از or پیش از

These are usually synonymous and interchangeable in use.

بیش از ناهار یک ساعت پیاده روی کردم. pish-az nahār yek sā'at piyade ravi kardam. I went for an hour-long walk before lunch.

وبنكه به ايران بروم كمى فارسى يادگرفتم. aabl-az-inke be irān beravam kami fārsi yād gereftam. I learnt some Persian before going to Iran.

'after', 'afterwards' بعد از or پس از

بس از سه روز در شیراز به بندرعباس رفتیم. pas-az se ruz dar shirāz be bandar-abbās raftim. After three days in Shiraz we went to Bandar Abbas.

امشب، بعد از شام به منزل شما می آییم. emshab, ba'd-az shām be manzel-e shomā mi-āyim. We are coming to your house after supper tonight.

غير از برويز، دو پسر ديگر هم در اين آپارتمان زندگی می کنند. غير از پرويز، دو پسر ديگر هم در اين آپارتمان زندگی می کنند. gheyr-az parviz, do pesar-e digar ham dar in aparteman zendegi mikonand. Apart from Parviz two other boys also live in this apartment.

'outside (of) خارج از or بيرون از

az shahr arzantar ast. Land prices are cheaper outside the city.

nemitavānid in lebās rā birun-az manzel bepushid. You cannot wear this dress (or clothes) outside the house.

145

ليا bā 'with', 'by', 'despite', 'because', 'in', 'to'

سارا دیگر با من حرف نمی زُنَد. sārā digar bā man harf nemizanad. Sara no longer speaks to (lit. with) me.

با من مشورت كرد و با پولش يك ماشين خريد. bā man mashvarat kard va bā pulash yek māshin kharid. He consulted me and bought a car with his money.

نرگس با اتوبوس به تبریز رفت. narges bā otobus be tabriz raft. Narges went to Tabriz by bus.

این فرم را لطفاً با خودکار یا قلم پُر کنید. in form rā lotfan bā khodkār yā qalam por konid. Please fill in this form in biro or pen.

احمد با خواهر شیرین ازدواج کرده است. ahmad bā khāhar-e shirin ezdevāj karde ast. Ahmad has married (lit. got married to/with) Shirin's sister.

مى كند. dust-e royā bā barādarash dar su'ed zendegi mikonad. Roya's friend lives with her brother in Sweden.

با شنیدن این خبر خیالم راحت شد. bā shanidan-e in khabar khiyālam rāhat shod. My mind was comforted (rested) after hearing this news.

بهتر است با غذا آب نخوريد. behtar ast bā ghazā āb nakhorid. It is better if you don't drink water with food.

مريم با سوسن ميانهٔ خوبى ندارد. maryam bā susan miyāneye khubi nadārad. Maryam doesn't get on well with Sussan.

با ادب و احترام بسیار از او خواهش کردیم که سالن را ترک کند. bā adab o ehterām besiār az u khāhesh kardim ke sālon rā tark konad. We asked him politely and with respect (lit. we asked of him) to leave the hall.

قامىكنند. مىكنند. ānhā hamishe bā yekdigar da'vā mikonand. They always fight with each other.

, bi 'without' بي

can also be added to nouns and adjectives to form the opposite or convey the sense of 'without', 'un-', or '-less'.

بى خود اين پول را به الهه دادى. bi-khod in pul rā be elāhe dādi. You shouldn't have given the money to Elahe. (Lit. You gave her the money with no good reason.)

بى تعارف مى گويم، هر وقت دوست داريد به خانهٔ ما بياييد. bi-ta'ārof miguyam, har vaqt dust dārid be khāne-ye mā biyāid. I am saying it without ceremony (i.e. without just trying to be nice), come to our house whenever you like.

می گویند گربه حیوان بیو فاییست. miguyand gorbe heyvān-e bi-vafāyist. They say that a cat is a faithless (unfaithful) creature (animal).

Similarly:

بیکار = بیکار unemployed, jobless بی + کار = بیکار impolite, rude (lit. without culture) بی + اَدَب = بی ادب undoubtedly, without a doubt بی + تردید = بیتردید helpless, wretched, hopeless

ਪੱ*tā* 'until', 'as soon as', 'by' (showing the extent or limit of things), 'as far as', 'in order to'

محسن از لندن به استانبول پرواز کرد و از آنجا تا تهران با اتوبوس رفت. mohsen az landan be estānbol parvāz kard va az ān jā tā tehrān bā otobus raft. Mohsen flew from London to Istanbul and from there took the bus to Tehran (as far as Tehran).

این کتاب را تا فردا تمام می کنم. in ketāb rā tā fardā tamām mikonam. I'll finish this book by tomorrow (lit. till tomorrow).

لاس فارسى او تا ماه آينده تمام مى شود. kelās-e fārsi-ye u tā māh-e āyande támām mishavad. His Persian classes will come to an end by next month.

147

in a huff, through the door

رفت. تا مرا دید از اتاق بیرون رفت tā marā did az otāq birun raft. He left the room as soon as he saw me.

من به ایران آمده ام تا خانوادهٔ شوهرم را ببینم. man be irān āmade-am tā khānevāde-ye shoharm rā bebinam. I have come to Iran to see (lit. in order to see) my husband's family.

Here Lacts as a co-ordinate linking two clauses rather than as a preposition.

سالار هر شب از ساعت هشت و نيم تا نه و نيم به كلاس پيانو مى رود. sālār har sháb az sā'at-e hasht o nim tā sā'at-e noh o nim be kelās-e piyāno miravad. Salar goes to piano classes every night from 8.30 to 9.30 p.m.

می گردم. do ruz دو روز است که از صبح تا شب دُنبال این کتاب می گردم. ast ke az sobh tā shab donbāl-e in ketāb migardam. I have been searching for (looking for) this book for two days, from dawn till night.

ميف كه تا آخرين روز اقامتُش در يونان باران آمد. heyf ke tā akharin ruz-e eqāmatash dar yunān bārān āmad. Pity that it rained till (or to) the last day of his stay in Greece.

در این مغازه به جهانگردان تا ده درصد تخفیف می دهند. dar in maghāze be jahāngardān tā dah dar sad takhfif midahand. In this shop they give tourists up to 10% reduction.

Prepositions that take the ezafe

There are great many prepositions that are linked to the noun following them by the ezafe. They are rather too numerous to list here, but the following are some of the most commonly used prepositions of this category: بدون، دُنبال، دَم، سَر، لَب، درباره، پیش بَهلوی، کنار، نزدیک، برای، بالای، زیر، روی، پایین، جلوی، پشت، پهلوی، کنار، نزدیک،

Note that if the preposition ends with a vowel then the ezafe will take the form of the ω ye or the hamze sign ε . For example 'up', ends with the long vowel $I\bar{a}$, therefore the preposition 'above' will be ω $b\bar{a}l\bar{a}$ -ye.

Here are some examples of usage:

'for' برای

Please bring me a (cup of) tea. الطفاً یک چای برای من بیاور. I bought this book for you.

'above', 'top', 'on'

The top floor of طبقهٔ بالای لین ساختمان مال یک پزشک است. this building belongs to a physician.

Don't put the glass of ليوان آب ميوه را بالاى تليويزيون نَگُذار! fruit juice on top of the television!

'below', 'beneath' یاپین

است. Below (at the foot of) پایین تپه یک دریاچهٔ خیلی قشنگ است. the hill there is a very pretty lake.

'underneath', 'under' زیر

الدن زیر پایت را همیشه نگاه کن! Always look 'under your feet' on the pavements of London.

المواظب باش زير ماشين نروى! Be careful not to get run over by a car (don't go under a car)!

. گردنبند ژاله را زیر میز آشپزخانه پیدا کردیم We found Zhale's necklace under the kitchen table.

'above', 'on top of'

Your keys are on the hall table. کلید شما روی میز راهرو است. If you place اگر چیز داغ روی کامپیوتر بگذارید خراب می شود. a hot thing on top of the computer it will get damaged.

'in front of' جلوي

At night they just sit in شبها فقط جلوى تلويزيون مى نشينند. front of the tv.

باید به هر قیمت جلوی جنگ را بگیرند. They must stop (lit. prevent, stand in front of) the war at any price.

'behind' يشت

چرا پُشتِ سرِ او حرف می زنید؟ Why are you talking behind his back?

Our house is behind the cinema. خانهٔ ما پُشت سینما است.

'beside', 'by the side of', 'next to' يهلوي

ال در سینما پهلوی یک آقای پرحرف نشسته بودم. In the cinema I was sitting next to a chatterbox (man).

'next to', 'by'

On the control on the bus I like to sit next to the window.

آنها خانهٔ قشنگی کنار دریا دارند. They have a nice house by the sea.

'close to', 'near' نزدیک

مدرسهٔ بچه های من نزدیک یک پارک بزرگ است. My children's school is near a big park.

صدای آنها را خیلی خوب شنیدیم چون نزدیک صحنه بودیم. We heard their voices very well because we were close to the stage.

'without' بدون

ایرانیان نمی توانند بدونِ ویزا به اروپا سفر کنند. Iranians may not travel to Europe without a visa.

'after', 'for'

(in the sense of 'to go after something', 'to look for something', 'to go and pick up someone')

جکار می کنی؟ دُنبالِ عینکُم می گردم. What are you doing? I am looking for my glasses.

آیا می توانید روز شنبه در فرودگاه به دُنبالِ ما بیایید؟

Can you come and pick us up (lit. come for us) from the airport on Saturday?

'next to', 'by', 'close to'

الك كواهم بود. I'll be waiting for you by the entrance (lit. door) of the bakery.

many meanings سر

(prefixed to a noun 'at the head of', 'at the end of', 'at the table', 'in the', 'during')

. سركوچهٔ ما يك بقاليست. There is a grocer's at the top of our street.

I met Marjan at work. سر کار بامرجان آشنا شدم.

He was very quiet during supper. سرِ شام خیلی ساکت بود.

.You must not talk *in* the class. نباید سرِ کلاس حرف بزنید. **edge of'**

If you put the vase اگر این گلدان را لب میز بگذارید می افتد. on the edge of the table it will fall.

دریاره 'about', 'on the subject of', 'concerning' دریاره ؟

What is this book about?

این کتاب دریارهٔ چست؟

با دوستم دریارهٔ جَشنوارهٔ فیلمهای ایرانی حرف می زدم.

I was talking to my friend about the Iranian Film Festival.

in the presence of', 'in front of' 'before', 'with', 'to' بیش شماست. My book is with you. (You have got my book.)

He wasn't well and حالش خوب نبود و او را پیش دکتر بردند. they took him to the doctor.

Why don't you come to us? چرا پیشِ ما نمی آیید؟ Why don't you come to us? پیشِ اُستاد عُمومی موسیقی ایرانی یادمی گیرند. They are learning Persian music with Master Omumi.

آفردا شب پیش خواهرم می روم. I will go to my sister's tomorrow night.

Note: There is a very clear distinction between the uses of به 'to', and به 'to'. The preposition به is used for indicating the

direction of movement towards something, as in 'going to a city' or 'into a house'. However, the English idiomatic saying 'going to someone's', even though direction is indicated, must be translated using the Persian preposition به بيش دوستم مى روم really means towards or into, so to say 'I am going to Yazd, to my friend's' would be: به يزد، پيش دوستم مى روم .

151

Exercise 1

Listen to the recording demonstrating the use of prepositions. Then translate the text into English:

مغازهٔ پِدرزنِ سیروس

پدرزنِ سیروس یک مغازهٔ سبزی (vegetables, herbs) و میوه فروشی دارد. مغازه اش در خیابانِ فردوسی است. جلوی مغازه یک پیاده روی (pavement) باریک (narrow) و جوی آب است. چند درخت بلند و یک دکهٔ روزنامه فروشی هم جلوی مغازه هست. در طرف راست مغازه یک شیرینی فروشی و در طرف چپ آن یک کفاشیست. روبروی مغازه، آنطرف خیابان، یک آرایشگاه (hairdresser, beauty salon)، مغازه، آنطرف خیابان، یک آرایشگاه (بان های خارجی است. روی مغازه، مطب یک بانک و یک آموزشگاه زبان های خارجی است. روی مغازه، مطب سیروس از صبح زود تا شب در این مغازه کار می کند ولی گاهی برای ناهار به چلوکبابی نزدیک سینما می رود.

خیابان فردوسی همیشه شلوغ است. فقط صبح های زود کمی خلوت (quiet) می شود. در این خیابان همه جور مغازه هست: کتاب فروشی، عکاسی، خیاطی، نجاری، بوتیک لباس، جواهرفروشی، نانوایی، قصابی، داروخانه و مغازه های دیگر. پدرزن سیروس همه نوع سبزی و میوه در مغازه اش می فروشد: جَعفری، نَعناع، اسفناج، سیر، کدو، پیاز، بادنجان، گوجه فرنگی، سیب زمینی، پرتقال، مون، انگور، انار، سیب، هلو، گلابی و خربزه و غیره.

Exercise 2

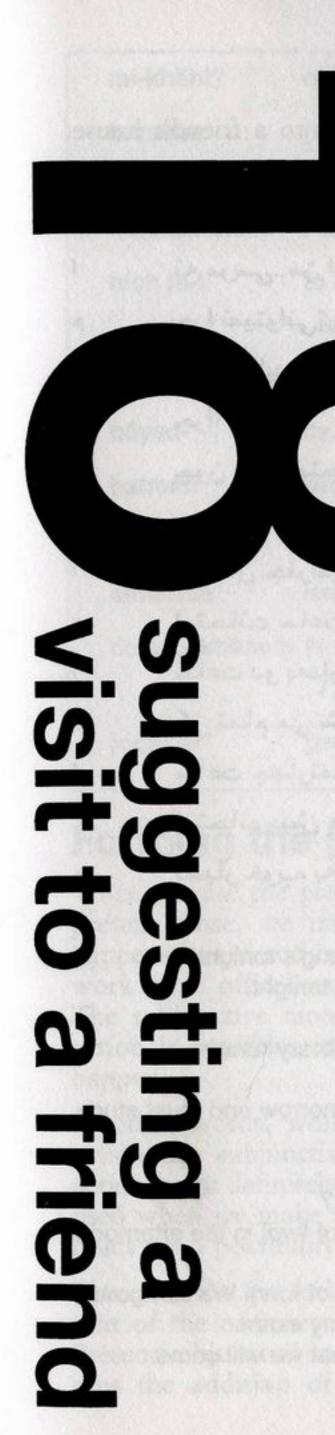
Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 Maryam came to our house last night.
- 2 We went to Ali's house by bus.
- 3 She put the vase on the table.
- 4 His shoes are under the bed.
- 5 I want to go to my grandmother's this weekend.
- 6 There is some food in the fridge.
- 7 Don't fill in the form in pencil.
- 8 Where are you going for your holidays?



مراج فالعارابة والوكواني فزاليك سينما دي رود

Design on pottery, 12th century



In this unit you will learn how to

- · ask for things
- ask someone else to do something for you
- express wishes, hopes and plans

Dialogue

In the dialogue, Maryam suggests a visit to a friend's house. (Listen carefully to the verbs.)

م
í
م
i
م
í
م
i
م
í
م
í
م

M	Do you want (us) to go to Hushang's tonight?
A	No, thanks. I can't go anywhere tonight.
M	Why can't you?
A	I have got to (definitely) go the library tonight.
M	Why?
A	Because I have got an exam tomorrow and must study.
M	What exam have you got?
A	I have got a geography exam.
M	What time does your exam start?
A	It starts at two o'clock (lit. hour of two) in the afternoon.
M	What time (when) does it end?
A	(It) ends at four o'clock (lit. hour of four). We can go to
	Hushang tomorrow night, after my exam.
M	Very well, I will call him to say that we will come tomorrow night.

mi-khāhi?	do you (pl.) want?	میخواهی (خواستن)
beravim	(subjunctive) (for us) to go	برکویم (رفتن)
nemitavānam	I cannot	نميتوانم (توانِستَن)
hich jā-i	to nowhere – to anywhere	هیچ جایی
beravam	(subjunctive) (that) I go	برَوَم
bāyad	must	بايد
hatman	definitely	حَتماً
chon	because	چون
emtehān	examination	إمتحان
dars bekhānam	(subjunctive) (that) I study	درس بخوانم (درس خواندن)
joghrāfi	geography	جُغراي

155

Forming the present subjunctive

When we use the present indicative mood, that is the simple present tense, we imply that an action has either actually happened once and continues habitually (e.g. 'I live in Iran', 'I work in an office') or will happen or is happening right now. The subjunctive mood, by way of contrast, implies that an action is possible, or suggested, i.e. it may, should or could happen.

In other words, while the indicative mood describes a real action, the subjunctive mood is used in sentences where the action is not definitely going to happen. The subjunctive verb is used when we make a wish, express a fear, anxiety or desire, point out a possibility or doubt or set a condition.

Therefore the formation of the subjunctive present is similar to that of the ordinary present tense with one small difference. Present subjunctive is formed from the present stem of the verb plus the addition of the personal endings and, here is the difference, the prefix __, be is used instead of the prefix __, mi, which is used for the ordinary present tense.

First, we need to work out the present stem in exactly the same way as we did in Unit 15 to form the simple present tense: infinitive \rightarrow present stem. We can then use the formula: present subjunctive = personal endings + present stem + \rightarrow .

خوابیدن For example, the present subjunctive of the verb خوابیدن 'to sleep' is formed by working out the present stem first: خوابیدن ← خوابیدن ← خوابیدن خوا

These give you the present subjunctive of the verb 'to sleep'. However, these verbs are only occasionally used on their own in a sentence. A subjunctive sentence normally needs its main subjunctive verb and also another word or verb to point out the sense of 'possibility', 'wishfulness', 'fear', 'obligation' or 'desire' and so on. For example, in English, we usually say 'I want to buy an umbrella', 'She very much hopes to go to Iran this summer', 'We may come to your house', 'I must see that film' and 'They can't go to the party'. The underlined verbs in these examples, known as 'modals' ('can', 'want', 'must') modify the main verb by indicating the possible, wishful or obligatory sense of the action. They will look like this:

I want to buy an umbrella. می خواهم یک چتر بخرکم.

She very much hopes to go to Iran this summer.

او خیلی اُمیدوار است (که) اِمسال تابستان به ایران برود.

We may come to your house. ما شاید به خانهٔ شما بیاییم.

is also possible.)

I must see that film. باید آن فیلم را ببینکم.

I must see that film. باید آن فیلم را ببینکم.

They can't go to the party. (آنها) نمی توانند به مهمانی بروند. ویدانند به مهمانی بروند. e subjunctive form stays the same whether the modal is in the

The subjunctive form stays the same whether the modal is in the present or the past. The present subjunctive is indicated by the

stressed prefix in the positive and by in the negative. In many cases, the subjunctive, and thus the prefix is the equivalent of an English infinitive, e.g. 'want to go', 'able to stay', 'hopes to travel', 'have got to run', etc.

157

suggesting a

 ∞

Other examples using modals

I can (am able to) see Reza. مى توانم رضا را ببينم. They could (were able to) come by bus. مى توانستند با اتوبوس بيايند.

You must (have to) work. (تو) بايد كار بكنى.

A variety of adjectives may be used for the notion of 'must', e.g.:

I am forced to/must work. مجبورم کار بکنم. I have no choice but to work. ناچارم کار بکنم. It is better that you go /leave. بهتر است بروی.

Subjunctive elsewhere

There are many expressions besides the modals which also modify an action as hope, possibility, desire, intent, etc., e.g.:

I hope he phones today. امروز تلفن بكند.

I feel like/inclined to sleep. ميل دارم بخوابم.

It is possible that he may go/leave today.

ممكن است كه امروز برود.

We wish to travel to China next year.

آرزو ميكنيم كه سال ديگر/آينده به چين سفر بكنيم.

is also possible.)

The subjunctive is also used for suggested action, e.g. 'shall we...', 'let' (بگذارید), 'before' (بیش از اینکه / پیش از اینکه / پیش از اینکه), 'please' (خواهش میکنم/لطفاً), 'they decided' (تصمیم گرفتند), 'instead of' (جز اینکه/بغیر از اینکه), etc.

Exercise 1

Read the story about Mr Halu, an absent-minded husband, and follow it on the recording. Then translate it into English:

آقای کم حافظه:

وقتیکه آقای کم حافظه، صبح ،از خانه اش بیرون می آمد، زنش یک نامه به او داد و گفت: «این نامه را حتماً امروز پست کن. نامهٔ خیلی مهمی است. فراموش نکن.»

ولی آقای کم حافظه حرف زنش را فراموش کرد و نامه را به صندوق پست نیانداخت. وقتی از اتوبوس پیاده شد و دوان دوان به طرف اداره اش می رفت ناگهان یک آقایی آهسته به شانه اش زد و گفت: «نامه یادتان نرود!»

آقای کم حافظه خیلی تعجب کرد و نامه را به صندوق انداخت و به طرف اداره اش راه افتاد. در راه ناگهان خانم خوشگلی به او گفت: «آقا، نامه تان را فراموش نکنید.»

ایندفعه آقای کم حافظه ایستاد و با تعجب زیاد گفت: «خدایا! این مردم از کجا می دانند که من باید نامه ای را پست کنم؟ من چند دقیقه پیش آنرا پست کردم!»

در جواب خانم خندید و گفت: «پس لطفاً این یادداشت را از پشتتان بردارید.»

روی یادداشت نوشته بود: «خواهش می کنم به شوهرم بگویید نامه را فراموش نکند.»

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1 They want to see you tomorrow night.
- 2 I can't go to my Persian class this evening.
- 3 We hope to buy a bigger house next summer.
- 4 She wanted to travel to Shiraz too.
- 5 Please call before going to his house.



planming a summer trip

In this unit you will learn how to

- · use the proper future tense
- talk about holidays and holiday destinations

principles of the tather completed with the

D

Dialogue

د امسال تابستان چکار میکنی؟

م چند هُفته کار می کنم ولی بعد به ایران خواهم رفت.

اُمیدوارم هر چه زودتر ویزایم را بگیریم.

چه خوب. در ایران چه کارها خواهی کرد و کجاها

خواهی رفت؟

م من با یک دوستم به ایران میروم. ما چند روز در تهرار

م من با یک دوستم به ایران میروم. ما چند روز در تهران خواهیم ماند و بعد به چندین شهر سفر خواهیم کرد. د در ایران دوست و آشنا دارید؟

م آره، تنها نخواهیم بود. در ماه ژوئیه چندنفر دیگر از همکلاسی هایم هم به ایران خواهند آمد.

مطمئنم خیلی به شما خوش خواهد گذشت.

D	What are you doing this summer?
M	I shall work for a few weeks and will then go to Iran. I
1,01	hope to get my visa as soon as possible.
D	How wonderful. What sorts of things will you be doing
	in Iran and where (lit. which places) will you go to?
М	I am going to Iran with a friend of mine. We will spend a few days in Tehran and will then travel to a few cities.
D	Do you have friends and acquaintances in Iran?
М	Yup, we won't be alone. A few of my classmates will also come to Iran in July.

I am sure you will have a very good time.

Forming the proper future tense

It is quite normal to use the present tense for the future. However, there is a proper future tense in Persian and it is generally used for rather emphatic statements with reference to the future.

The formation of the future tense requires the help of the present tense of the auxiliary verb 'to want' خواستن khāstan (present stem: خواه) and the past stem of the main verb.

Remember that the مى -mi prefix that is mandatory for present tenses is omitted from the formation of the future tense (see table).

161

planning a summer trip

19

Singular	Plural
I shall go خواهم رَفت	we shall go خواهیم رَفت
you shall go خواهى رَفت	you (pl.) shall go خواهید رَفت
he, she, it shall go	they shall go خواهند رَفت

Compound verbs are formed in exactly the same way: the verb element is conjugated and the *noun* or *preposition* component tags along. For example, زندگی کردن 'to live' is shown in the following table.

Singular	Plural
زندگی خواهم کرد	زندگی خواهیم کرد
I shall live	we shall live
زندگی خواهی کرد	زندگی خواهید کرد
you shall live	you (pl.) shall live
زندگی خواهد کرد	زندگی خواهند کرد
he, she, it shall live	they shall live

An example of preposition + verb compound verb, درآوردن 'to take out, to get out' is shown in the following table.

Singular	Plural	
در خواهم آورد	در خواهیم آورد	
I shall bring it out	we shall bring it out	
در خواهی آورد	در خواهید آورد	
you shall bring it out	you (pl.) shall bring it out	
در خواهد آورد	در خواهند آورد	
he, she, it shall bring it out	they shall bring it out	

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences into Persian, using the proper future tense:

- 1 I will see you tomorrow evening.
- 2 Will they travel by bus or by train?
- 3 She will write this letter next week and give it to me.
- 4 They will call us when they get back from Paris.
- 5 We will buy a much bigger house soon.

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

- ۱ هفتهٔ آینده به ایران می روم و سه ماه در تهران خواهم ماند.
 - ٢ حتماً امروز عصر اين نامه را خواهند نوشت.
 - ٣ كى به خانهٔ خواهرتان خواهيد رفت؟
 - ۴ پیام شما را ما به بابک خواهیم داد.
 - ٥ چند ساعت ديگر كارتان با كامپيوتر تمام خواهد شد؟

Exercise 3

In the dialogue below you hope to finish a letter in Persian in time to send it off to Iran with your friend's husband. Put the English sentences into Persian and translate the Persian parts too.

شمااین نامه را کی تمام خواهید کرد؟ Friend

You I'll try to finish it tomorrow evening, but I can't promise.

Will you be at home?

بله، امیدوارم که بعداز ساعت هفت خانه باشم. من Friend

میتوانم به شما کمک کنم که نامه را به فارسی بنویسید.

You That would be very helpful. I will come to your house

after dinner at about 9:30.

شما شام بیایید پیش ما. بعداز شام نامه را مینویسیم ومن

آنرا به شوهرم میدهم که روز بعد با خودش به ایران ببرد.

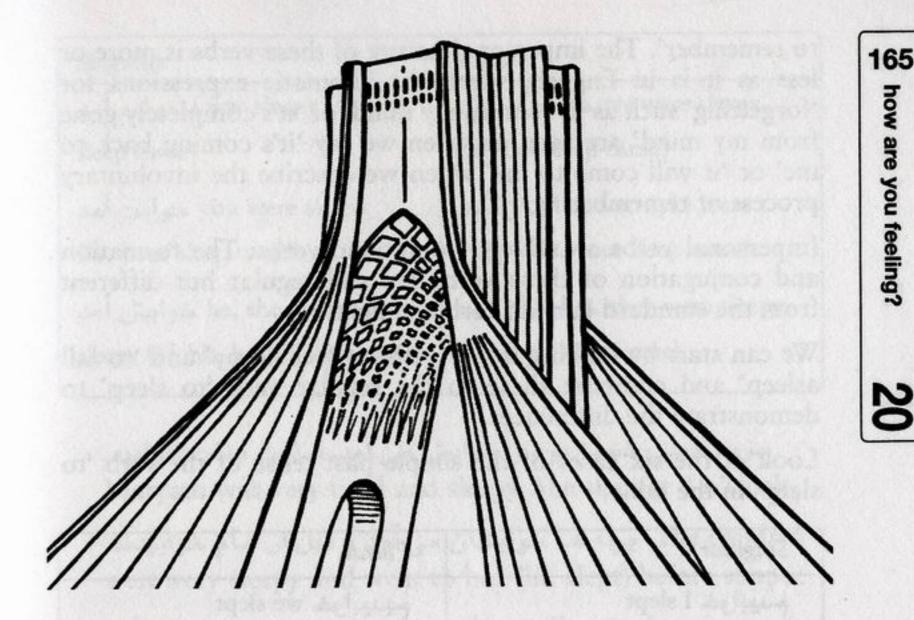


In this unit you will learn how to

- · use idiomatic impersonal verbs
- · express likes and dislikes
- describe the various stages of going to sleep
- say you are tired
- · say you are having a good time

Dialogue

- مریم جان، چطوری؟ خوبی؟ انگار خیلی خسته ای؟
 - نه، چیزیم نیست. فقط خوابم می آید.
 - چرا؟ مگر دیشب خوب نخوابیدی؟
- چرا، خوب خوابیدم ولی دیر خوابیدم. دیشب به یک مهمانی رفته بودیم و خیلی دیر به منزل برگشتیم.
 - مهمانی چطور بود؟ خوش گذشت؟
- جای شما خالی، خیلی مهمانی خوبی بود و جدا به ما خوش گذشت. غذای خوشمزه، موسیقی عالی، بیشتر دوستان و فامیل هم بودند و تا دیروقت رقصیدیم.
 - غذا را كي پخته بود؟
- غذا را از یک رستوران ایرانی آورده بودند. اسم رستوران يادم نيست ولى همه مهمانها از غذا خوششان آمد.
- How are you, dear Maryam? Are you well? You seem very tired.
- No, there is nothing wrong with me. I am just sleepy (lit. my sleep is coming).
- Why? Did you not sleep well last night?
- Yes, I did sleep well but I went to bed late (lit. slept late). We went to a party last night and returned home very late.
- How was the party? Did you have a good time (lit. did the time pass pleasantly)?
- Wish you were there (lit. your place was empty you were conspicuous by your absence); it was a very good party and we had a truly good time (lit. the time passed seriously, pleasantly): delicious food, fantastic music, most of our friends and family were there too and we danced till late.
- Who had cooked the food?
- They had brought the food from an Iranian restaurant. I can't remember the name of the restaurant (lit. the name of the restaurant is not [in] my memory) but all the guests liked the food (lit. their pleasure came from the food).



how are you feeling?

Freedom Monument, Tehran

When we first discussed the formation of Persian verbs we emphasized that the ending of every verb lets you know who the subject is, that is the agent of the action undertaken by the verb, so when we see or hear the verb رفتيم raftim, by looking at the ending -im we know immediately that the action of 'going' was done by 'us', as in 'we went'. However, there are a small group of Persian verbs that do not follow this pattern. These verbs are normally known as impersonal verbs and their formation requires a slightly more advanced knowledge of grammar. As these verbs refer to some of the most basic everyday actions and, furthermore, are very frequently used by native speakers of Persian it is important you should know something about their use and formation. In addition, for some actions, such as 'to fall asleep', there are no verbs other than these impersonal constructions.

Impersonal verbs usually refer to actions that are perceived as involuntary. Sometimes this is clear to see, as in the example in the dialogue for instance. 'To fall asleep', for example, is usually outside our control and it happens while the subject, or the doer of the action, has very little say or control on the outcome. Other examples are 'suddenly to forget something' or 'suddenly

to remember'. The impersonal nature of these verbs is more or less as it is in English, when the idiomatic expressions for 'forgetting' such as 'it escapes my mind' or 'it's completely gone from my mind' are used or when we say 'it's coming back to me' or 'it will come to me' when we describe the involuntary process of remembering.

Impersonal verbs are *always* compound verbs. The formation and conjugation of these verbs are still regular but different from the standard Persian verb conjugation.

We can start by looking at the verb 'to feel sleepy' and 'to fall asleep' and compare these to the regular verb 'to sleep' to demonstrate the differences.

Look at the six cases of the simple past tense of the verb 'to sleep' in the table.

Singular	Plural
I slept خوابیدم	we slept خوابیدیم
you slept خوابیدی	you (pl.) slept خوابیدید
he, she, it slept خوابيد	they slept خوابیدَند

The subject ending is clearly different in each case, making it quite clear as to who has undertaken the action which is 'voluntary', in the sense that you can say:

من دیشب در پارک خوابیدم. I slept in the park last night. آنها توی قطار خوابیدند. They slept on (lit. in) the train.

But 'feeling sleepy' and 'falling asleep' are perceived as outside our control, as if the force of sleep 'comes' (feeling sleepy) and then 'takes us away' (falling asleep). The impersonal Persian verb 'to feel sleep' describes this process exactly. Grammatically, it is the sleep that acts like the subject and the six cases will follow the pattern of 'my sleep came', 'your sleep came', 'his or her sleep came' etc. (see table). In all cases 'the sleep' is a third person singular subject so its verb component of 'came' will always be a third person singular verb and the compound 'my sleep' will be formed by using the attached, 'suffixed' possessive pronouns .

Singular	Plural	
I was sleepy (lit. my	we were sleepy خوابمان آمد	
sleep came)	(lit. our sleep came)	
you were sleepy خوابّت آمد	you (pl.) were خوابتان آمد	
(lit. your sleep came)	sleepy (lit. your sleep came)	
he, she, it was خوابَش آمد	they were sleepy خوابشان آمد	
sleepy (lit. his, her, its sleep came)	(lit. their sleep came)	

167

how are you feeling?

مريم خيلى خسته بود و خوابش مى آمد. ساعت هشت خوابيد. Maryam was very tired and sleepy. She slept at 8 o'clock.

. بچه ها خوابشان مى آمد و قبل از شام خوابيدند. The children were very sleepy and went to bed (lit. slept) before supper.

. امشب خوابم نمى آيد.

I am not sleepy (lit. my sleep is not coming) tonight.

Other impersonal verbs

'To fall asleep' (lit. sleep to take s.o. away) خواب بردن:

Singular	Plural
نرد I fell asleep (lit. sleep took me away)	we fell asleep خوابِمان برد
you fell asleep خوابَت بُرد he, she, it fell asleep	you (pl.) fell asleep خوابتان بُرد they fell asleep خوابشان بُرد

"To like' or 'dislike' someone or something بد آمدن – خوش آمدن. In this verb it is the person's pleasure or displeasure that is derived from something. This verb requires the preposition 'of' or 'from':

مایکل از فیلمهای جدید ایرانی خوشش می آید. Michael likes (lit. his joy comes from) the new Iranian films.

ما خیلی از این رستوران خوشمان می آید. We really like (lit. our pleasure comes from) this restaurant.

آنها از بوی ماهی بدشان می آید. They dislike (or hate) (lit. their displeasure comes from) the smell of fish.

The verb 'to like' دوست داشتن is the 'regular' version of this impersonal verb.

'To forget' از یاد رفتن (lit. gone from mind) از یاد رفتن is optional: 'I forgot' یادم رفت 'we forgot' یادمان رفت 'you (sing.) forgot' یادت رفت 'To remember' یادت رفت (lit. to come back to one's mind) به یاد آمدن 's optional:

من یادم رفت کیف پولم را بیاورم. I forgot (lit. it slipped my mind) to bring my (money) purse.

است. They remembered دیشب یادشان آمد که فردا تولد مُژگان است. last night that tomorrow is Mojgan's birthday.

'To have a good time' is also an impersonal Persian verb, but it is formed slightly differently from the ones we have seen so far. This verb is again always in the third person singular, however, the subject is in the form of the relevant pronoun and the verb requires the preposition it 'to' as we can see from the following table.

Singular	Plural
به من خوش گذشت	بهما خوش گذشت
I had a good time	we had a good time
به تو خوش گذشت	به شما خوش گذشت
you had a good time	you (pl.) had a good time
به او خوش گذشت	به آنها خوش گذشت
he, she, it had a good time	they had a good time

در ایران به ما خیلی خوش گذشت. We had a lovely time in Iran. اُمیدوارم به شما در مهمانی خوش بگذرد. I hope you have a nice time at the party.

Finally, چیزی بودن is another of these impersonal and also idiomatic verbs used to describe one's mood or state of being. In the negative, it is close to saying 'I am OK': چیزیم نیست is implying 'there is nothing wrong with me' or 'I am fine'.

Exercise 1

Translate into Persian using the appropriate impersonal verbs:

- 1 My sister went to Italy last summer and she had a very nice time.
- 2 I don't like this colour but that blue is pretty.
- 3 You forgot to call Maryam yesterday.
- 4 We want to watch the ten o'clock news but I am too sleepy.
- 5 They fell asleep on the train and didn't see the beautiful scenery.

Exercise 2

Translate into English:

١ آنها از اين محلة شهر بدشان مي آيد.

169

how are you feeling?

- ۲ تو چرا همیشه در جلسات سخنرانی خوابت می برد؟
- ۲ هر بار که به ایران می رویم خیلی بهمان خوش می گذرد.
 - ۴ یادم رفت که فردا قرارِ دندانساز دارم یا پس فردا؟
 - او از موسیقی ایرانی خوشش می آید.

Exercise 3

Practise the use of impersonal verbs in the following dialogue. Classical music and making a reservation at a restaurant will be discussed:

Amir	شما از موسیقی اصیل ایرانی خوشتان می آید؟
You	Yes, I love Persian music, why do you ask?

Amir	بله، چلوکبابی یاس آنجاست و تا دیروقت هم باز است.
You	Right then, I'll book a table for eight people for 10:30.

grammar reference unit

Arabic influence on Persian

Due to the influence of Islam, the Arabic alphabet is one of the most widespread writing systems in the world, found in large regions of Africa and Asia that were conquered either by the Arab or Muslim armies or, later, formed parts of the non-Arab empires that had converted to Islam. The Arabic alphabet has been adopted by users of other groups of languages, such as Persian, Pashtu, Ottoman Turkish, Urdu and Malay (Jawi), to write their own vernaculars.

The presence of Arab conquerors of the seventh century in lands such as Persia often lasted for hundreds of years, inevitably leading to the importation of numerous Arabic words into the local language. Furthermore, Arabic was the language of intellectual, scientific and philosophical discourse used by countless non-Arab writers, in the same way that Latin served as the language of scientific and religious writing in Europe.

What distinguishes Persian from the languages spoken in other conquered parts of the early Muslim Empire, such as Syria for example, is that the influence of Arabic on Persian has been limited to the expansion of vocabulary and Arabic grammar has hardly touched the *structure* of the language.

Moreover, the Arabic words that have entered Persian have become 'Persianized' to the extent that they are occasionally unrecognizable to present-day speakers of Arabic.

Since 1979 there has been a propensity on the part of the judiciary, sections of the administration and academia to borrow more Arabic phrases and to use them in broadcasts, speeches and writings, but again this is limited to an increase in the number of loan nouns, adjectives, adverbs and prepositions and it does not affect the construction or formation of Persian words. Arabic, a semitic language, uses a root system that does not exist in Persian, which means that even when Arabic plurals are used in Persian, they apply only to Arabic words and Persian words cannot follow the Arabic pattern to form their plurals.

Someone who is learning to speak Persian does not need to have any prior knowledge of the Arabic language to realize quite quickly that certain words used in Persian can be grouped together, as there seems to be a 'family resemblance' demonstrated by the occurence in each group of three fixed letters, appearing in different patterns. The following example should illustrate this point further. Look at these words: درس – دروس – مدرسه – مدارس – مدرس کتاب- کتب- مکتب- مکاتب- مکتوب

The following examples show how the Arabic root system is used to derive nouns by inserting certain vowel patterns in the blank slots in the root template.

Root form: k_t_b

Some words derived from the root form:

ketāb book kotob books katbi written kātib scribe

maktab (primary) school

These Arabic words have been imported and lexicalized in Persian. So, for instance, the Arabic plural form for ketāb is kotob obtained by the root derivation system. In Persian, the plural for the lexical word ketāb can be given as in Arabic (kotob) or it can be obtained simply by adding the Persian plural marker: ketāb + hā → ketābhā.

The learner of basic Persian does not need to worry about learning the rules of Arabic word formation and can merely learn the common Arabic words that have everyday usage as part of his or her vocabulary. However, in-depth study of the Persian literature and even understanding the subtleties of the common language will not be possible without some knowledge of Arabic.

▶ The following is an example of a text that relies on many Arabic words and derivatives (and a translation can be found in the Key):

کتبی هست که می توانیم جواب سؤال های مختلف را در آنها پیدا كنيم. اين كتابها را لغت نامه و دايره المعارف مي خوانيم. در اين كتابها كلمه ها و اسامى به ترتيب الفبايى و با حروف سياه درج شده و دربارهٔ هریک توضیح مفصلی با حروف نازک داده شده است.

دایره المعارف معمولا کتابِ قطوری است که می توانیم هر نوع اطلاعات علمی، ادبی، هنری، تاریخی، جغرافیایی و جز اینها را در آن بيابيم. برخى از دايره المعارف ها در جلدهاى متعددى فراهم آمده است.

north شمال northeast شمال شرقى northwest شمال غربي east southeast جنوب شرقى southwest جنوب غربي south جنوب

کشور ایران در نیمکرهٔ شمالی و در جنوب غربی آسیا است. ایران یکی از کشورهای بزرگ خاورمیانه است. مساحت ایران ۱۶۴۸۱۹۵ (یک ملیون و ششصدو چهل و هشت هزار و صد و نود و پنج) کیلومتر مربع است. ایران با هفت کشور همسایه است. در شمال و شمال شرقی، ایران با جمهوری ترکمنستان و در شمال غربی با جمهوری های آذربایجان و ارمنستان هم مرز است. پایتختِ آذربایجان شهر باکوست. پایتخت جمهوری ارمنستان،

شهر ایروان است و عشق آباد پایتخت جمهوری ترکمنستان است. در شرق ایران کشور افغانستان قرار دارد و پاکستان در جنوب شرقی ایران است.

پایتخت افغانستان شهر کابل و پایتخت پاکستان، اسلام آباد است. ایران دو همسایهٔ غربی دارد: کشور ترکیه در شمال غربی و کشور عراق در غرب.

پایتخت ترکیه، آنکارا و پایتخت عراق شهر تاریخی بغداد است. مرز بین ایران و همسایگانش در جاهایی بسیار کوتاه و در جاهای دیگر طولانیست.

مَثَلاً، مَرزِ ایران و جُمهوری اَرمَنستان فَقَط ۳۸ (سی و هُشت) کیلومتراست ولی مرزِ بینِ ایران و عراق ۴۰۹ (هزار و ششصد و نُه) کیلومتر است. ایران یک کشور کوهستانی و نسبتاً خُشک است وَلی در شُمال و جُنوب ایران دو دریای خیلی بُزُرگ قرار دارد. دریای خزَر در شُمال ایرانست و خلیج فارس در جُنوب ایران. دریای خزَر با ۴۲۴۲۰ (چهارصد و بیست و چهار هزار و دویست) کیلومتر مُریع وسعت، بُزُرگترین دریاچهٔ جهان است. خاویار دریای خزر در دُنیا معروف است. مرزِ ایران و آب های خلیج فارس چه اَهمییتی دارد؟ نَفت ایران و کشورهای دیگر مَنطقه از راه خلیج فارس به اُقیانوس هند و از آنجا به کشورهای دیگر دُنیا می رود. مروارید و ماهی های خلیج فارس هم خیلی معروف است. رَبانِ رَسمی مروارید و ماهی های خلیج فارس هم خیلی معروف است. عربی بیشتر مَردُم ایران فارسی است ولی خیلی اَز ایرانیان، تُرکی، کُردی یا عَربی حَرف می زَنَد.

۹۹٪ (نَوَد و نُه دَرصد) مَردُم ایران مُسلمان هَستَند: ۸۹٪ (هَشتاد و نُه دَرصَد) شیعه و ۱۰٪ (دَه دَرصَد) سُنی. ولی تا پیشِ از قَرنِ هَفتمِ میلادی، بیشتَرِ ایرانیان زَرتُشتی بودَند و هَنوز هَم زَرتُشتیان، یَهودیان و

مسیحیان در ایران زندگی می کُنند.

پایتخت ایران شهر تهران است. اصفهان، شیران، تبرین، کرمانشاه، اَهوان، رَشت و مَشهد از شهرهای بُزُرگ ایرانند.

شهر تهران در دامنهٔ کوه است. هوای تهران در تابستان خیلی گرم و در زمستان خیلی گرم و در زمستان خیلی سرد و برفی است.

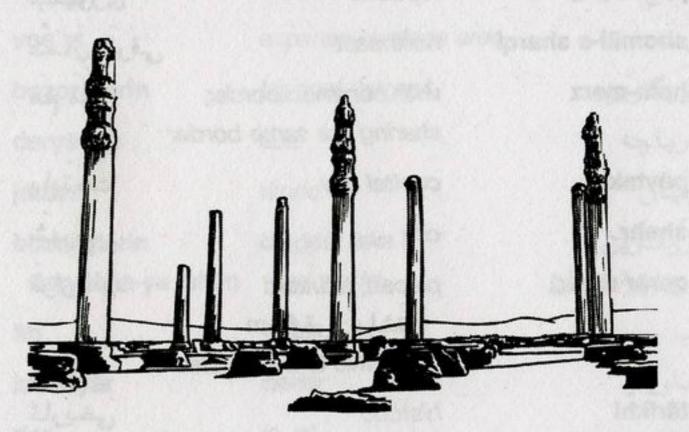
بهار و پاییزِ تهران بسیار زیباست. روزِ اَولِ بهار، نُوروز، و عیدِ باستانیِ ایرانیان است.

رَنگ های گلیم، قالیچه، و قالی های ایرانی همان رَنگ های طبیعت ایران است. گلیم، قالیچه، و قالی های ایرانی بسیار زیبا و قَشَنگند. شاعرانِ بُزرگِ ایران هم معروف اند. یکی از شاعرانِ بُزُرگِ ایران فردوسی نام دارد.

او بیشتر از هزار سالِ پیش در شهرِ طوس، در شُمالِ شَرقی ایران به دُنیا آمد.

این شعرِ فردوسی آرمانِ خوبی برای زِندِگیست:

tavānā bovad har ke dānā bovad ze dānesh del-e pir bornā bovad تُوانا بُورد هر که دانا بُورد زِدانِش دِلِ پیر برنا بُود



Persepolis: the Columns

keshvar	country	كشور
dar	in the second second	دُر
nim-kore	hemisphere	نیمکُرِه
shomāli	northern	شُمالی
jonub	south	جُنوب ا
gharbi	western	غُربي
ast Land July	is is	اًست کے ایکار
yeki az	one of	یکی اُز
bozorg	big, large	بُزُرگ
khāvar-e miyane	Middle East	خاورميانه
masāhat	surface area, expanse	مُساحَت
moraba'	square	مريع
bā	with, by	با
haft	seven	هَفت
hamsāye	neighbour	هُمسایه
	(p	(همسایگان ۱
shomāl	north	شُمال
jomhuri	republic	جُمهوري
shomāl-e sharqi	northeast	شُمالِ شُرقى
ham-marz	with common border, sharing the same borde	هُم مرز
pāytakht	capital city	پایتَخت
shahr	city	شُهر
qarār dārad	placed, situated قرار داشتَن from infinitive to be situated	قُرار دارُد و
tārikhi	historic	تاريخي

jā	place	جارستي ري
jāhā	places (pl.)	جاها
jāhā'i	some places (indefinite pl	جاهایی (.
besiyār	much, very	بسيار
kutāh	short (brief)	كوتاه
tulāni	long	طولاني
masalan	for instance, for example	مَثَلاً
faqat	only	فَقَط
vali	however, but	وُلی
kuhestāni	mountainous	كوهستانى
nesbatan	relatively	نسِبَتا
khoshk	dry, arid	خُشک
daryā	sea	دريا
kheyli	very, much	خیلی
daryā-ye kheyli bozorg	very big sea	دِرِیای خیلی بزرگ
khazar	the Caspian	عُزَر
Khalij-e fārs	Persian Gulf	خليج فارس
vos'at	expanse, surface area	وُسعَت ا
bozorgtarin	biggest, largest	ب ['] زُر گ تَرین
daryāche	lake 88	درياچه
jahān	world	جُهان
bozorgtarin daryāche-ye jahān	biggest lake in the world	بُزُرگترین دریاچهٔ جَهان
āb	water	آب عسید
khāviyār	caviar	خاويار
dar	in, at	mobile ja

donyā	world	, دُنيا
ma'ruf	famous	مُعروف
che?	what?	جه؟
ahammiyat	importance, significance	اً هُمييت
naft	oil adama some	نَفت
digar	other	دیگر
mantaqe	region	منطقه
az	from, of, through	اَز
rāh	way, path, road	راه
be	to	به
oqiyānus	ocean	أقيانوس
hend	India	امند
ānjā	there, that place	آنُجا
miravad	(to go رَفْتَن inf.) goes, 3rd per. sing. present te	می رَوَد ense
morvārid	pearl	ر مروارید
māhi	fish	ماهى
ham	also, too	اهم
jam'iyyat	population	جُمعييت
nazdik	near by, close to	نُزديک
shast o hasht	ت 68	شَصت وُ هَش
nafar	persons	نَفَر
zabān	language (tongue)	زُبان
rasmi	official	رُسمي
bishtar	here most of	بيشتر
	(more, majority)	LESSYCHES
mardom	people	مَردُم

harf mizanand	they speak	حُرف می زُنند
mosalmān	Muslims	مُسلَمان
hastand	they are	هُستَند
shi'e	Shi'ite	شيعه
sonni	Sunni	سُنی
pish az	before, prior to	پیش از
qarn	century	قُرن
haftom	seventh	مفتم
milādi	Christian era (BCE)	میلادی
zartoshti	Zoroastrian	زرتُشتی
budanad	they were	بودُند
hanuz	still, as yet	هنوز
yahudi	Jewish	یهودی .pl یهودیان
masihi	Christian	مسیحیان .pl مسیحی
zendegi mi-konand	they live	زِندِگی می کنند
dāmane	outskirts	دامنه
kuh	mountain	کوه
havā	weather (also air)	هوا
tābestān	summer	تابستان
garm	warm (hot)	گرم
zemestān	winter	زِمِستان
sard	cold	سرد
barfi	snowy	برفی
bahār	spring	بهار
pā'iz	autumn	پاییز
zibā	pretty (beautiful)	زيبا
ruz	day	روز

avval	first	أوَل
noruz	first day of Persian New Year	نوروز
'eid	festival, feast, celebration	عيد
bāstani	ancient	باستانى
rang	colour, shade	رُنگ
gelim	kelim rugs	كليم
qāliche	small rugs	قاليچِه
qāli	carpet	قالى
hamān	that very	هُمان
tabi'at	nature	طَبيعَت
qashang	beautiful	قَشَنگ
shā'er	poet	شاعر
nām dārad	is named	نام دارد
hezār	thousand	هزار
sāl	year	سال
sāl-e pish	year(s) ago	سالِ پیش
be donyā āmad	was born, lit. came to the world	به دُنیا آمد
in she'r	this poem	این شعر
ārmān	maxim	آرمان
khub	good	خوب
khubi	a good	خوبي
barā-ye	for	برای
zendegi	life	زندگی

[The country of] Iran is [situated] in the northern hemisphere, in southwest Asia. Iran is one of the largest countries of the Middle East. Iran's area is 1,648,195 square kilometres. Iran borders onto seven countries (lit. is neighbours with seven countries). To the north and the northeast, Iran borders onto the Republic of Turkmenistan and in the northwest it borders onto the Republics of Azerbaijan and Armenia.

The capital of Azerbaijan is the city of Baku. The capital of the Republic of Armenia is the city of Yerevan and Eshqabad is the capital of the Republic of Turkmenistan.

[The country of] Afghanistan is situated to the east of Iran and Pakistan is on the southeast [borders] of Iran. The capital of Afghanistan is Kabul and Pakistan's capital is Islamabad.

Iran has two western neighbours: Turkey in the northwest and Iraq in the west.

The capital of Turkey is Ankara and the capital of Iraq is the historic city of Baghdad.

The border between Iran and its neighbours at some points is very short and in others it is long. For example, the border between Iran and the Republic of Armenia is only 38 km but the border between Iran and Iraq is 1,609 km.

Iran is a mountainous and relatively dry country; however, two very big seas lie to the north and the south of Iran. The Caspian Sea is to the north of Iran and the Persian Gulf is to the south. The Caspian Sea, with an area of 424,200 sq km, is the biggest sea in the world. The caviar of the Caspian is world famous. The Persian Gulf and Iran share a 2,043-km long border. What is the significance of the Persian Gulf? The oil from Iran and from other countries of the region goes to other countries of the world by way of the Persian Gulf and through the Indian Ocean. The pearls and fish from the Persian Gulf are also very renowned.

The population of Iran is nearly 68 million. The official language of most people in Iran is Persian; however, many Iranians speak Turkish, Kurdish or Arabic.

Ninety-nine per cent of the people in Iran are Muslim: 89% Shi'ite and 10% Sunni. However, before the seventh century (BCE), Iranians were Zoroastrian and Zoroastrians, Jews and Christians still live in Iran.

The colours of Persian kelims, rugs and carpets are the very colours of nature in Iran. Persian rugs and carpets are very pretty and beautiful.

The great poets of Iran are also famous. One of the great poets of Iran is called Ferdosi. He was born, more than 1,000 years ago, in the city of Tus, in northeast Iran.

This poem of Ferdosi is a good maxim for life:

Knowledge is Power. (Lit. He who has knowledge is powerful.)

It is from knowledge that the heart of an old person remains rejuvenated.

particle for the analysis of the factories of the same is ordered the force

Sea is no charmouth of Irais malabackers in Colf is seaths, soorts.

Children and hard Sunna Bernesen beiter the seventh contains

(MCE), Legiture were Zerberchan and Aserberrane, Jews achi

the buyder between hous and loan is 1.507 km.

Persian/Iranian studies are offered at undergraduate or postgraduate level at the following universities: University of London School of Oriental and African Studies, Cambridge, Edinburgh, Oxford, Manchester, and Durham; Australian National University (ANU); Harvard, New York University, Princeton, Columbia, Texas Austin, Utah, Chicago and Toronto.

The internet will give you access to a wealth of resources on Persian culture. The Iranian Cultural and Information Center at http://tehran.stanford.edu/

is a good place to start, with its many sections (history, literature, names, etc.).

The British Institute of Persian Studies, at the British Academy, 10 Carlton House Terrace, London SW1Y 5AH, is another fine resource.

http://www.britac.ac.uk/institutes/bips

Language resources are available at http://www.columbia.edu/cu/lweb/indiv/mideast/cuvlm/persian.html

News is available from the BBC at http://www.bbc.co.uk/persian/

The following official government websites will give you valuable information:

http://www.gov.ir/

For a real treasure trove, go to http://www.iranian.com

Complex sentences in Persian

Complex sentences can mean anything from two simple sentences linked by the conjunction 'and' to very complex sentences containing subordinate and relative clauses, temporal and dependent clauses as well as indirect statements.

The purpose of this appendix is to refer to some aspect of relative clauses because although they are considered as advanced grammar they are used widely in everyday conversation and writing.

Co-ordinate sentences

When two sentences are linked by 'and' j they form the simplest of complex sentences:

مريم آمد و كتابم را آورد. Maryam arrived and brought my book.

The link can also be 'but' or 'however':

ا من ژاپنی هستم ولی در پاریس زندگی می کنم. I am Japanese but I live in Paris.

When the two actions in the two parts of the sentence follow each other in time and the agent or subject of the verb is the same person, the co-ordinate 'and' o can be omitted:

ا به بازار رفتم میوه خریدم. I went to the market (and) bought fruits.

Subordinate sentences

When the action in the second part of the sentence is somehow dependent on the action in the first part or if the first action is done 'in order' that the second action is possible, the two sentences can follow each other without a conjunction; however, the verb in the second or 'subordinate clause' is in the *subjunctive*:

ا به کتابخانه می روم درس بخوانم. I am going to the library to study (lit. that I may study or in order to study).

به ایران رفته اند فامیلشان را ببینند. They have gone to Iran to see their family.

In the last two sentences the subject of the verb is one and the same person. However, if the subjects (agents) of the two partsentences are different people, a conjunction such as $4 \le ke$, or $1 \le t\bar{a}$ ('in order') is used:

این کتاب ها را آوردند تا من به شما بدهم. They brought these books so that I give them to you (or in order that I give them to you).

I opened the در اتاق را باز کردم که صدای ما را بهتر بشنود. door (of the room) so that he could hear us better.

However, and and can, of course, be used in sentences where the subject does not change, so the first examples will be:

به کتابخانه می روم که درس بخوانم.

به ایران رفته اند تا فامیلشان را ببینند.

که 'Temporal sentences: uses of 'when'

ke 'that, when, where' is used in the following sentences, in a similar way to the English use:

اسه سال پیش بود که به انگلستان آمدیم. It was three years ago that we came to England.

در تهران بود که با این نویسنده آشنا شدند. It was in Tehran where they met this writer.

I was so آنقدر خسته بودم که شام نخوردم و زود خوابیدم. tired that I did not eat any supper and went to bed early. The weather is not so cold for us to wear a winter coat (lit. that we wear a winter coat).

ا به خانه رسیدم که بابک تلفن زد. I got home when Babak telephoned.

که 'Relative clause sentences with 'who, which'

The nearest examples to the relative clause as it is understood in English are sentences that effectively select one person, place or unit from a wider selection. There is no separate equivalent of the English relative pronouns 'who' or 'which' and instead is used. The sentences are constructed in a remarkably similar way to the English relative clause, however, every sentence must start according to one of the following patterns:

Look at these examples:

مردی که دیروز به خانهٔ ما آمد، ایرانی است.

The man who came to our house yesterday is Iranian.

The 'antecedent' here is مرد 'the man' so the pattern will be:

دختران جوانی که کنار پنجره نشسته اند در کوچهٔ ما زندگی می کنند. The young girls who are sitting by the window live in our street.

کتابی را که علی خرید دربارهٔ قالیهای ایرانیست.

(کتاب + ی + را + که) The book that Ali bought is about Persian carpets. (Note: The verb in the first clause is transitive.)

لُطفاً نامه ای را که به خواهرم نوشته ام پست کنید. Please post the letter that I have written to my sister.

The exceptions to this rule are when the antecedent is a proper noun, i.e. a name or a pronoun or a noun followed by suffixed pronoun (such as 'my friend' دوست من or دوست من). In this case,

the is not added to the antecedent:

مريم كه طبقهٔ بالا زندگى مى كند آشپز خيلى خوبى است. Maryam who lives upstairs is a very good cook.

Adverbial conjunctions

as long as	تا وقتيكه
as soon as	همینکه
because	المراجع المراجع المراجع ونكه
despite the fact that	با اینکه – با وجودیکه
just as, as	همانطوریکه
since	از وقتیکه – از زمانیکه
when	وقتیکه- موقعیکه- زمانیکه
whenever	هر وقتیکه
where	جاييكه
wherever	هر جاییکه

whichever هر کدامکه while

هر کس که or هرکسیکه whoever

Conditional sentences in Persian

Conditional sentences in Persian are introduced by the word agar 'if'. The part of the sentence that contains the 'if' clause is known as the protasis in grammar books. The section of the sentence that contains the 'if' clause normally precedes the section of the sentence that deals with the consequence of the condition, which is known as the apodosis, but we will refer to the two components of a conditional sentence as the 'if clause' and the 'subsequent' clause.

In English, it is not unusual to place the section that contains the word 'if' in the second part of the sentence and say, for example: 'I'll come to your party if I can get a lift.' In Persian, however, it is very unusual not to start a conditional sentence with the word 'if', that is I agar.

Conditional sentences are divided into two groups:

- 1 Sentences that offer possible conditions
- 2 Sentences that offer impossible conditions.

Possible conditions

The following table demonstrates the type of verbs that are needed in each of the two clauses or sections of a conditional sentence, depending on whether the condition applies to a time in the past, present or future.

Verb in 'if' clause Protasis	Subsequent clause Apodosis	Type of condition
Present subjunctive or simple past* see notes	Present or future	Conditionals referring to future
Present indicative** see notes	Present or future	Conditionals referring to present
Subjunctive past	Present or future	Conditionals referring to past

^{*} If the action in the 'if clause' is a single action and takes place before the action in the main or 'subsequent' clause then simple past is used in the 'if' clause.

We can equally use present subjunctive in the 'if' clause of this same example:

** With the verb 'to be', although the present indicative can be used (e.g. هست or هست) it is quite common to use the present subjunctive of 'to be', such as باشيم or باشد in the 'if clause' too.

Examples of possible conditionals in future, present and past

Future

(The subjunctive is used when the outcome is quite likely.)

اگر به منزل على رفتيد، من هم مى روم / خواهم رفت. If you go to Ali's house, I will go too.

(The use of simple past means that I will only go if you do go to Ali's house.)

اگر قیمت خانه در لندن ارزان بشود، یک آپارتمان در غرب لندن می خرم. If property prices come down in London I'll buy a flat in West London.

189

Present

اگر دارید شام می خورید، بعدا تلفن می زنم. If you are having (eating) supper, I'll call later.

اگر بچه ها سر و صدا می کنند، بگویید ساکت شوند. If the children are making a lot of noise tell them to keep quiet.

Note: In this last sentence, the use of imperative 'tell them' means that the second verb in the subsequent clause, keep quiet', has to be in the subjunctive:

اگر این کتاب را دوست دارید آن را به شما می دهم. If you like this book I'll give it to you.

اگر خواب است، او را بیدار نکنید. Don't wake him up if he is asleep.

Usually, the present subjunctive of 'to be' is used in conditions in the present time.

Past

اگر على خبر را نشنيده باشد، به او مي گويم / خواهم گفت. If Ali hasn't heard the news (yet or already) I will tell him.

Note: For conditionals referring to the past, where the English uses the future perfect tense in the subsequent clause, the Persian uses the perfect, also known as the past narrative tense:

اگر تا به حال به خانهٔ ما آمده باشند حتما گربه ام را دیده اند. If they have ever (lit. up to now) been to our house they will have surely seen my cat.

Impossible conditionals

Impossible conditions, whether relating to the past or present take the imperfect (past continuous) in both clauses:

اگر می توانستم، حتماً می آمدم. I would have come if I could. (or If I could come I would (but I cannot).)

اگر زودتر می رفتید، به اتوبوس می رسیدید. If you had gone earlier, you would have caught the bus.

اگر جوانتر بود، تا صبح می رقصید. If he had been younger he would have danced till morning. (or He would dance till morning if he were younger (but he is not).)

Pluperfect (or remote past tense, as it is also known) can also be used in both clauses of an impossible condition, but this is usually confined to events relating to the past. Use of this tense means that we refer to the *possibility* of an event in the past which in fact did not happen because it *could not*:

اگر تندتر رفته بودیم به اتوبوس رسیده بودیم.

If we had gone faster we would have caught the bus.

اگر در را قفل کرده بود، دزد نیامده بود. If he had locked the door, thieves wouldn't have come or, combining the imperfect and the pluperfect:

Subjunctive past

Subjunctive past = subjunctive present of 'to be' + past participle forms of the main verb.

Subjunctive present of 'to be':

باشم باشیم باشی باشید باشد باشند

Reminder: Past participle = ه / ه + past stem, e.g. رفته، خورده، گفته، آمده، زندگی کرده

Spoken versus written language

If you eavesdrop on a conversation between two Persian speakers, or listen to any informal programme on the radio or television then you will soon realize that spoken Persian is quite different from the written language. This is, of course, true of any language, especially of the vernacular of the urban population living in big cities. However, the differences between the spoken and written Persian are nothing as drastic as the differences between colloquial and written Arabic, for example. The most significant differences, apart from the accent of the speakers, are contained in pronunciation of certain vowels and verb endings. This is invariably done based on rules (of a sort) and so can be learnt. However, nothing will aid the learning process as much as some time spent listening to the colloquial conversations of native speakers or radio plays, comedies and chatshows where you will hear colloquial Persian being used.

The grammar of colloquial Persian is really not very different from that of the written language, however, the spoken everyday language is full of local colour and flavour and the presence of many regional accents and dialects makes it that much more difficult for learners of Persian to follow. It is just as mind boggling trying to work out what a Cockney taxi driver says as it is to bargain in a stall in the Tehran bazaar. However, there are certain grammatical rules that can help.

First of all, the sentence order is more arbitrary in colloquial Persian than it is in the written language. For instance, it is not uncommon to start the sentence with the verb as in the following example:

Written: دیشب به سینما رفتم. Last night I went to the cinema.

Spoken: دیشب رفتم سینما.

The spoken Persian sentence order is that much closer to the subject-verb-object of some European languages such as English. It is worth noting that this order is most common with intransitive verbs, i.e. verbs that do not take the direct object marker l_1 $r\bar{a}$.

The other significant difference between the spoken and written Persian is the way in which verbs are pronounced, especially verbs whose present stem ends or begins with a vowel. The verb 'to be', in the present tense, is used mainly in its short forms, however, in spoken Persian the third person singular of this form is pronounced as just a final vowel e after consonants and as the letter w s after vowels a and \bar{a} and sometimes u:

The following patterns should give you some idea of the spoken verbal forms. Compare the written to the spoken style. The asterisks denote the unchanged forms:

رفتن 'to go' Simple past Present tense رفتم → رفتم* رفتیم → رفتیم* می روم → می رم می رویم → می ریم رفتی ← رفتی* رفتید ← رفتین می روی ← می ری می روید ← می رین رفت ← رفت * رفتند ← رفتن می رود ← می ره می روند ← می رن

As you see the changes in the past tense verbs are quite minor, however, every one of the six cases of the present tense of the verb 'to go' is pronounced differently. The same applies to the subjunctive from of the verb:

Look at the present tense forms of the verb 'to say' كفتن:

Subjunctive

Present tense

sing.

sing.

193

appendix: complex grammar

می کویم ← می کم می کوییم ← می کیم بکویم ← بکم بکوییم ← بکیم می کویی ← می کی می کویید ← می کین بکویی ← بکی بکویید ← بکین می گوید ← می که می کویند ← می گن بکوید ← بکه بکویند ← بگن

pl.

The past tense forms are the same as in 'to go', where only the second and third person plurals change:

گفتید ← گفتین you (pl.) said گفتند ← گفتن Other examples:

'to come' آمدن

'to give' دادن

Present

Past

آمدیم ← اومدیم می آیم ← می یام می آییم ← می یایم آمدی ← اومدی آمدید ← اومدین می آیی ← می یای می آیید ← می یاین آمدند ← اومدُن مى آيد ← مى ياد مى آيند ← ميان

Present

pl. می دهیم - می دیم می دهم م می دم می دھی + می دی می دهد + می ده می دهند - می دن

'to allow' or 'to place' گذاشتن

Present

می گذارم ← می ذارم می گذاریم ← می ذاریم می گذاری ← می ذاری می گذارید ← می ذارین می گذارد ← می ذاره می گذارند ← می ذارن

The present stem of the infinitive 'to want' خواستن changes from خواه khāh to خواه khā. The conjugation follows the pattern of 'to come'. The present stem of 'to know' دانستن changes from دان dan to دان dun and its past stem changes from tunest; the verb is then conjugated as تونست the verbs seen earlier. In spoken Persian, the present tense stem of the verb 'to sit' نشستن neshastan loses its initial n and neshin. نشين neshin instead of نشين

Nouns also undergo some changes. Usually, but not always, the long vowel \bar{a} preceding an m or an n, changes to a long vowel u:

خانه \rightarrow خونه نان \rightarrow نون ایرانی \rightarrow ایرونی آن \rightarrow اون مهمان \rightarrow مهمون حَمام ﴾ حموم تُمام ﴾ تُموم بادام ﴾ بادوم كُدام ﴾ كُدوم

The numeral 'one' یک yek changes to يه ye if it comes before a noun and is on its own:

یک روز → یه روز یک پسر ← یه پسر یک اُتاق ← یه اُتاق

However, it stays the same in number combinations and after nouns:

چهل و یک، صد و بیست و یک، ساعت یک بعدازظهر

And finally, the direct object marker, or post-position 1, ra, also changes depending on whether it follows a vowel or a consonant. After vowels, I, becomes o with a short o vowel. After consonants it becomes a mere short vowel o :

ميوه را mive ra ميوه رو mive ro او را u rā او رو u rā او رو u rā ميوه را أقارا← أقارو

mano مَنُو ino من inoکتاب را← کتاب ketābo

magar, meaning 'but' (used with a negative question expecting the answer 'yes' or with an affirmative question expecting the answer 'no'), also becomes an age in spoken Persian:

(But) didn't I tell you?

Grammar formulas

Before using the formulas make sure you recognize some of the basic terminology: e.g. past stem is formed by removing the -an (;) from the end of the infinitive; present stem is formed by dropping the complete ending of the regular verb (these are دن يدن تن or consulting the present stem table supplied. Also, don't forget that there are only five subject endings for all past tense verbs: however, present tenses have one extra ending which is for the third person singular, making it a total of six. Finally, remember that with compound verbs you only conjugate the verb element and then put the noun or preposition component of it at the beginning.

195

appendix: complex grammar

Three verbs have been used in the grammar formulas that follow. These are:

رفتن 'to go', irregular single verb; past stem: رفت, present stem: رو:

to read books', regular compound verb; past 'to read books', regular compound verb; stem: کتاب) خوان, present stem: کتاب) خواند

ندگی کردن 'to live', irregular compound verb; past stem: (زندگی) کن :present stem (زندگی) کرد

Present tense

1 Present indicative	mi (می) + present stem + subject endings*
می رَوَم (irregular) I go <i>or</i> I'll go	مى+ رُو + مَ
(regular) کتاب می خوانی you read (a book)	می+ خوان + ی
(irregular) زندگی می کُنَند they live	می+ کُن + َند

2 Present progressive	appropriate present form of 'to have'* + mi (می) + present stem + subject endings
دارم می رَوَم I am just coming	دارم + مى + رُو + مَ
داری کتاب می خوانی you are reading (a book)	داری + می + خوان + ی
دارند زندگی می کَنَند they are living	دارند + می + کُن + َند
داريم دارم*	
دارید داری	
دارند دارد	

3 Imperative*	be (ب) + present stem + subject
	endings (only for 2nd person
	plural [ید])
ر عد مدا العدار العداد برو	(but unusual to say bero,
go! (singular)	more common to say boro)
بروید	ب + رو + ید
go! (plural)	

4 Present subjunctive¹ بروم (that) I may go	be (ب) + present stem + subject endings • + رو + م
کتاب بخوانی (that) you may read a book زندگی بِکُنند or زندگی کُنند they may live	ب + خوان + ی ب + کن + ند
1 Present subjunctive usually appears	in conjunction with another verb such ear with a modal such as 'they want', ninor exceptions, don't need the be بــ.

Past tense

1 Simple past	past stem + subject endings*
رفتُم	رَفت + مَ
I went	the state of the s
کتاب خواندی you read (a book)	خواند + ي
زندگی کَرَدند they lived	کُرد + َند

Subject endings for the past tenses are:

-	
٩	يم
5	يد
_	نَد

2 Imperfect (past continous)	mi (می) + past stem + subject endings
می رَفتَم I used to go	مى + رَفت + مَ
کتاب می خواندی you were reading (a book)	می + خواند + ی
or you used to read (a book) زندگی می کَرَدند they used to live	می + کَرد + نَد

3 Past progressive ¹	appropriate past form of 'to have'² + mi (می) + past stem + subject endings
داشتم می رفتم I was about to go or just when I was leaving or I was just going when	داشتَم + می + رَفت + مَ
داشتی کتاب می خواندی you were reading your book when or just when you were reading your book	داشتی + می + خواند + ی

داشتند زندگی می کردند	داشتند + می + کرد + ند
they were living there when	

1 This gives the sense of an ongoing action that is interrupted or immediately followed by another action.

داشتیم داشتم 2 داشتید داشتی داشتند داشت

4 Past participle*	past stem + final short vowel 'e' • / •	
رَفته gone (missed)	رُفت + ــه	
كتاب خوانده well read	خواند + ه	
زندگی کَردِه lived (experienced)	کرد + ه	

* Past participle on its own could be an adjective or a noun too.

5 Present perfect	past participle of the verb + appropriate short form of present tense 'to be'*
رَفته اَم I have gone	رَفتِه + اَم
کتاب خوانده ای you have read books	خوانده + ای
زندگی کَرده اَند they have lived	كُردِه + اَند
ایم اُم اید ای	to ma no tensio acre i no americal acre I madra sec
اید ای آند آست	

6 Plupe ته بودم I had go		past participle of the verb + appropriate past tense of the verb 'to be'* رفته + بودم		
کتاب خوانده بودی you had read (a book) زندگی کرده بودند they had lived		خوانده + بودی		
		كَردِه + بودند		
بودم*	بوديم	o for his cours some halfstein file of		
بودی	بوديد			
بود	بودند ا			

7. Subjunctive past	past participle of main verb + appropriate present subjunctive form of 'to be'*	
رَفته باشَم I might have gone	رَفتِه + باشَم خواندِه + باشی	
کتاب خوانده باشی you might have read (a book)		
زندگی کرده باشند they might have lived	كُردِه + باشَند	
باشیم باشم*	es became' in odder to create a	
باشِید باشی		
باشد باشد		

Future tense

Future	appropriate present form of the modal 'will'* + past stem of main verb
خواهم رَفت I will/shall go	خواهم + رَفت
کتابخواهی خواند you will/shall read a book	خواهی + خواند
زندگی خواهی کَرد they will/shall live	خواهَند + كَرد

*The future tense is, technically, a verb formed from the past tense.

Remember you can use the present tense for the future too.

Remember no mi ...:

خواهيم خواهم خواهيد خواهي خواهند خواهد

Passive mood

Usually only transitive verbs such as 'to eat', 'to see' and 'to buy' can have a passive form. Intransitive verbs do not have a passive form. There are two ways of forming the passive verb: (1) formation with single verbs; (2) formation with compound verbs. In either case, we need the help of the verb shodan ثنون 'to become' in order to create a new compound, passive verb.

تشدن + For example, the passive of the single verb 'to eat' will be 'to be eaten'. 'to eat' is خورده غوردن. Past participle of خورده is خورده المدن = مدن = بستن (to close) وبستن (to be closed) وبستن (to be closed) وبستن شدن المدن = خورده المدن المدن = خورده المدن المدن = خورده المدن = مدن المدن = الم

active) I closed the door من در را بَستَم (passive) the door was shut

Various tenses of the passive compound verbs are formed like

any compound verb by using the general rules listed earlier. E.g. دردارد بسته می شوَد the door has been shut' or دردارد بسته می شوَد 'the door is about to be shut', ممکن است در بسته بشوَد 'the door may be about to be shut' (subjunctive).

Passive of compound verbs

In transitive compound verbs that have کردن kardan 'to do' as their verb part, کردن is simply changed to شدن E.g. ثموش کردن 'to switch off' or 'to turn off' becomes 'خاموش شدن 'to be switched off' or 'to be turned off'. Similarly, فراموش کردن 'to forget' becomes فراموش کردن 'to make' or 'to fix' becomes دُرُست کردن 'to be fixed'.

Some compound forms, however, have their own special passive. For example, the verbal element of most compounds ending with ذَدَن or ذَدَن is changed to حادَن and الْكُرفْتَن (or كُرفْتَن (or عُول خوردن) respectively: گول زَدَن 'to deceive' becomes كول زَدَن 'to be deceived'; كُتُك خوردن 'to hit, to slap' becomes 'كتُك زَدَن 'to be hit, to be slapped'

However, سامان داد 'to sort someone out, to help' becomes 'لوفتَن or سامان کوفتن 'to be sorted out or helped', سامان کرفتن 'to nurture' becomes پَروَرش دادن 'to be nurtured'; انجام یافتن 'to do, to complete' becomes انجام یافتن (or sometimes انجام شدن).

The odd one out is شکست دادن 'to defeat' which becomes 'to be defeated'.

These verbs are then conjugated like any other compound verb.

Remember, passive verbs never have a specific direct object and, therefore, never take the postposition l_{j} $r\bar{a}$.

Negative

The negative of all verbs is formed by prefixing the negative sign i na or i ne to the verb. If the verb form contains the continuous or present tense prefix of i ne, then the negative is formed by i ne. Otherwise, all other forms are put into the negative by the prefix i na. Remember to use a buffer if the

The only exception to this rule is the formation of the negative of subjunctive and imperative verbs in Persian. The subjunctive and imperative verbs begin with the prefix - be. The negative of these yerbs is formed by replacing the prefix with the negative in na prefix.

Examples:

I did not go نرفتم → I went رفتم note the buffer) I did not come) نیامدم → امدم they did not live زندگی نکردند → they lived زندگی کردند you were not coming نمى آمديد → you were not coming he has not eaten نخورده است → he has not eaten درس نخوانده بودیم → we had studied درس خوانده بودیم we had not studied

she does not buy نمی خرد → she buys می خرد they (may not) go (شاید) نروند → they (may not) go (notice na has replaced be)

!don't give نده! → !don't give

!sit down (pl.)! → نشینید! don't sit down بنشینید!

Note: Although it is not necessary to use the subjunctive with compound verbs, the use of negative i with compound subjunctive is compulsory:

they may not ندیده باشند → they may have seen دیده باشند have seen

we shall not say نخواهیم گفت → we shall not say

and different which the lift of the lift o

Writing, alphabet and pronunciation

Exercise 1

۱ بابا ۲ بازار ۳ پرستار ۴ آواز ۵ ماشین ۶ هزار ۷ مرجان ٨ ناظم ٩ اژدر ١٠ مقياس ١١ استراحت ١٢ اجاق ١٣ وراث ۱۴ کوچک ۱۵ خیابان ۱۶ گاری ۱۷ موقع ۱۸ سوسک ١٩ لاكيشت ٢٠ موشك ٢١ اصفهان ٢٢ ضرر ٢٣ ظهر ۲۴ طاووس ۲۵ یواشکی ۲۶ کتابخانه ۲۷ همسایه ۲۸ قهوه ۲۹ رادار ۳۰ سفیر

Exercise 2

pā - pāru - sup - kāshi - ketāb - kuche - mikh - sābun maryam – āqā – shirāz – afghān – emruz – izad – ashk – tāqche - kushesh - ārāmgāh - kāghaz - esfahān - ijāb - 'oghāb

Exercise 3

كوچك 8 نمك 7 واجب 6 آتش 5 آچار 4 بشقاب 3 پلنگ 2 فرد 1 هوا 15 زرد 14 قهوه 13 خانه 12 گوشت 11 ظهر 10 اُكبر 9 بيمارستان 21 بيست 20 دختر 19 شيرين 18 ايرلند 17 امشُ 16 خاله 25 عمو 24 هدف 23 شما 22

Unit 1

Exercise 1

صبع بخير خانم، سلام أحمد جان، سلام، عصربخير آقا خداحافظ مريم، شببخير بابك، سفربخير آقاى شمس

Exercise 2

۱ صبح بخیر مهری، خوش آمدی! ۲ بله، لطفاً، بیزحمت چای. (a) ٣ بِبَخشيد بابك. ۴ نَه مرسى، پَرى. ٥ سَفَربِخير رِضا و مُتِشْكِرُم. خواهش مىكنم.

(b) 1 Hello sir, if you please. 2 One tea and a Danish pastry, please. 3 Forgive me, madam, I am very sorry. 4 No thanks, dear Babak. 5 You are welcome, goodbye (lit. God keep you).

Exercise 3

1 ١ يكشنبه - سهشنبه - پنجشنبه - جمعه ٢ بهار- تابستان -زمستان 2 آبان - آذر 3 تیر - مرداد - شهریور 4 فروردین -

Unit 2

Exercise 1

1 5 17 70 74 V · 1.V 70A A19 4A 9AV 1.45 759.7

- یکصدو پنجاه و یک دویست یکهزارو ششصدو بیست و پنج 2 چهل و دو یازده هشت سیزده، چهل شصت و نه 3 7, 12, 23, 168, 591, 183, 9,212
- سه کتاب یک پسر هشت ماشین دو مرد چهارده روز 4

Exercise 2

- بیست و سوم چهل و یکم صدو بیست و پنجم نودو چهارم 1 دوم - ششم - دهم - يازدهم
- 2 fourth, 26th, third night, 1,000th, 11th day of Farvardin

Exercise 3

- پنجرهها - روزها - استادان، استادها - زنان، زنها 1 خواهران - خواهرها - ماشينها - پسران، پسرها - كتابخانهها جوانان، جوانها، - عاقلان - سه خواهر - ده پرنده - دو ساعت 2 گُلها - گربهها - زنان - روزها - تابستانها - قلمها - ترنها-شهرها – پسران –

205

Unit 3

Exercise 1

صبح بخیر، عصربخیر مریم، خیلی متشکرم رضا، خدانگهدار علی، سفر بخير، خانمها و أقايان، شب بخير

Unit 4

Exercise 1

١ اين قاليچه گرانست. ٢ آن اتاق خيلي بزرگ نيست ولي تميزست. ٣ آنها در أتوبوسند. ۴ آن دخترها خواننده نیستند. ٥ شما با مریم دوستید؟

Exercise 2

١ اين هلو خوشمزه است. ٢ مريم نقاش است. ٣ شما خسته هستيد / خسته اید. ۴ من جوانم / جوان هستم. ۵ ما در تهران هستیم.

Exercise 3

۱ نه، آن پسر اسکاتلندی نیست. ۲ نه، ما با ایرج دوست نیستیم. ۳ نه، تو ورزشکارنیستی. ۴ نه، آنها خیلی خستهنیستند. ۵ نه، ما نقاش نیستیم.

b)

207

مریم جان، سلام! به! بابک جان، سلام، صبح بخیر. چطوری؟ مرسی، قربانت، بد نیستم، تو چطوری؟ خوبی؟

ب مرسی، فریانت، بد نیستم، نو چط ،

م خیلی خویم، مرسی.

ب مریم جان تُنهایی؟

م نه، بابک، با دوستم با دوستم، یاسمن این بابکست. بابک نقاشست.

ى سلام.

ب سلام، ياسمن خانم. خوشوقتم. شما ايرانييد؟

ى بله من ايرانيم ولى مادرم روسست. شما أهل كجاييد؟

ب من شيرازيم. شما مثلِ مريم دانشجوييد؟

ى نه، من دانشجو نيستم، من عكاسم.

ب به! به! چه خوب! مریم، امشب منزلی؟

م بله من و ياسمن إمشب منزليم.

Unit 5

Exercise 1

١ شُما، ايشان ٢ تو ٣ شما - ايشان ۴ تو - او ٥ شما، ايشان

Exercise 2

(a) 1 large garden 2 Maryam's Persian book 3 Iranian man 4 my friend's daughters 5 delicious food 6 dark, cold night 7 London University or University of London 8 old house 9 china teapot of Babak's kind sister

۱ أنگور شيرين ۲ دوست روس مريم ۳ ماشين آقاى اَحمدى
 ۴ اُتاقِ قَشَنگِ بُزُرگ ۵ قاليهاى دستباف كاشان ۶ شهر تاريخى
 قديمى ۷ روز سرد آفتابى ۸ همسايه او ۹ چَتر سبز من
 ۱۰ مردان پير مهربان

نام من علیست. من ایرانی هستم. من در تهران دانشجو هستم. این، خواهر من مریم است. روز تولد مریم در دسامبر است. برادر دوست او همکلاس من است. اسم او مهرداد است. موی مهرداد قهوهایست. خانهٔ او در خیابان افشار است.

ر. خانهٔ گران غَذای سرد میوهٔ خوشمزه موی سیاه کَفشِ ناراحت صندلی راحت چشمِ سیاه هوای گرم موی طلایی گربهٔ سیاه کفش ارزان

Exercise 3

۱ مادربزرگم ۹۲ ساله است. ۲ او دخترخالهٔ من است.
 ۳ عموی من دوست پدر توست. ۴ برادر ما پزشک (دکتر) است.
 ۵ خواهرشوهر آنها و خواهر ما امروز در لندن هستند.

Exercise 4

۱ برادر من – برادرش ۲ اسب آنها – اسبشان ۳ خانهٔ ما – خانهٔ مان ۴ سگ سیاه شما – سگ سیاه تان ۵ چَترِ آنها – چَترِ شان ۶ دوست او – دوستش ۷ کتاب تو – کتابت ۸ عَموی مهربان من – عموی مهربانم ۹ مادربزرگ او – مادربزرگش ۱۰ شهر مان
 ۱۰ شهر ما – شهر مان

Exercise 5

1 hungry man 2 good weather 3 good, sunny weather 4 clever girl 5 young student 6 young Irish student 7 sour lemon 8 open window 9 old house 10 these two open doors 11 open doors 12 these open (and) large doors 13 that pretty (and) white cat 14 green, sour apples 15 mother of those two boys 16 young mother of those two small boys 17 kind grandfather 18 Shirazi sweet apples 19 green apple and sweet orange 20 warm day and cold night 21 country of Iran 22 British Isles 23 Tehran-Esfahan bus ticket 24 cities of Iran 25 Parisian shops

Exercise 7

۱ برادرم – برادر من ۲ ماشین کوچکت – ماشین کوچک تو ٣ خانهٔ بزرک گران ۴ اتاق راحت او – اتاق راحتش ۵ فنجان چای سرد ۶ قلم طلایی ما ۷ کفش سیاه ارزان ۸ سیب شیرین خوشمزه ۹ پسر جوان گرسنه ۱۰ کشور زیبای من

Unit 6

Exercise 1

۱ خانهٔ آنها به مغازه نزدیکتر است. ۲ برادر مریم خیلی از برادر من بلندتر است. ٣ بلندترين (بلند-قدترين) دختر اتاق برزيلي است. ۴ خانهٔ او خیلی از خانهٔ من بزرگتر است ولی باغ من بزرگتر است. ۵ آنها خیلی سختتر از تو کار میکنند. ۶ تو از ماریا بهتر فارسی حرف میزنی. - تو بهتر از ماریا فارسی حرف میزنی. ۷ امشب از دیشب گرمتر است. ۸ این بلندترین شب سال است. ۹ بهترین دوست من نزدیک پارک زندگی میکند. ۱۰ این فیلم خیلی طولانی است، طولانیتر از دکتر ژیواگو.

Exercise 2

1 Today is warmer than yesterday, but it's still very cold. 2 My sister's youngest child is called Roya. 3 Is chicken (meat) less fatty or fish (meat)? 4 You got to the restaurant earlier than us. 5 Today he is feeling better than yesterday.

Exercise 3

تهران بزرگتر است یا اصفهان؟ \لندن از تهران بزرگتر است ولی هوای تهران گرمتر است. ۱ خانهٔ من به مرکز شهر نزدیکتر است ولی خانهٔ افسانه نزدیکترین به پارک است. ۱ فیلم «خانه ای از ماسه و مه» خیلی خوب است، «بازگشت پادشاه» بهتر است ولی بهترین فيلم «مثل بكهام شوت بزن» است. 209

key to the exercises

Exercise 4

مريم، چه لباس قشنگي!

Thank you, very kind of you. It's my sister's dress.

خواهرت از تو بزرگتر است یا کوچکتر؟

My sister is four years younger (lit. smaller than me). She is the youngest child in the family.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

M	Whose glasses are these?
D	Which glasses?
M	These sunglasses. Are they yours Dariush?
D	No, these glasses are not mine, they are Amir's. Whose
	books and key are these?
M	The books belong to my brother and the key is mine.
D	Where is your brother today? Why is he not here?
M	My brother is at Reza's house today.
D	Who is Reza?
М	Reza is my brother's colleague. Reza is a
	photographer.
D	Is your brother a photographer too?
M	No, my brother is a graphic artist.

کشوری شبی پرندهای میزی صبحی استادی کوهی هفتهای مردی کتابی آقایی همسایهای دوستانی پایی خوابگاهی قلمی جزیرههایی گربهای صندلیای راهی شهری دری ماهیای اسبهایی روزی ستارهای خانهای

١ اسم من ... (مريم for example) است. ٢ اسم فاميل من ... (بهبودی for example) است. ۳ خانهٔ من در شمال لندن است. ۴ اسم مادرم مهری و اسم پدرم رازی است. ۵ تولد من آبان ۱۳۴۰ است. ۶ من در تهران بدنیا آمدم. ۷ من روزها در یک کتابفروشی کارمیکنم. ۸ نه، من دانشجو نیستم. ۹ من دو تا خواهر دارم ولی برادر ندارم. ١٠ ساعت الآن ... (دو و نيم بعدازظهر for example) است.

Exercise 6

Exercise 5

مردی خانهای پسرهایی گربهای ستارهای گلی شهرهایی میوههایی بچهای

Unit 8

Exercise 1

۱ مریم و علی یک خانهٔ کوچک خیلی قشنگ دارند. ۲ من غذای ژاپنی دوست ندارم ولی غذای لبنانی دوست دارم. ۳ فردا خیلی کار دارند. ۴ آیا در پاریس دوستی or دوستانی داری؟ ۵ زن برادرم شش دایی دارد.

Exercise 2

I have a small cottage in the mountains near the Caspian Sea. This cottage has neither electricity nor telephone, but has very beautiful views (lit. its views are very beautiful). There is a spring near the cottage. This cottage has two or three chairs, a wooden table, a large bed, a small kitchen and an open fireplace. This far-from-the-city cottage is the best place for resting (or relaxation).

Exercise 3

۱ ما در ایران دو تا ماشین داشتیم. ۲ او در خانهاش در ترکیه یک اسب، دو تا گربه، جوجه و خرگوش داشت. ۳ آنها چندین دوست در ایران داشتند. ۴ دیروز چقدر پول داشتی؟ ۵ من تلویزیون نداشتم ولی یک رادیوی قدیمی داشتم.

Exercise 4

۱ داشتم. ۲ شما ۳ او ۴ نداشتیم. ۵ داشتند؟

Unit 10

Exercise 1

۱ رفتید - ۲ رفتند - ۳ خوردیم - ۴ آمدی - ۵ دیدیم -۶ بودند - ۷ ماندم - ۸ داشتیم - ۹ بود - ۱۰ رسیدید؟ -

Exercise 2

۱ دیشب به خانهٔ ما آمد. ۲ سه سال در شیراز بودم. ۳ دو روز پیش به لندن رسیدیم. ۴ مریم و علی روز شنبه یک فیلم خیلی خوب دیدند. ۵ آیا امروز صبح چیزی از بازار خریدی؟

Unit 11

Exercise 1

١ غذايمان را خيلى تند خورديم. ٢ آنها اغلب نامههاى تشكر قشنگی مینوشتند. ۳ خوشبختانه همسایهٔ خیلی مهربانی بود. ۴ همیشه مریم را صبحها میدیدم. ۵ او معمولا با خانوادهاش در آن خانهٔ بزرگ زندگی می کرد. ۶ ما ماه پیش به شیراز رفتیم ولی متاسفانه هوا خوب نبود. ٧ ماريا قشنگ ميرقصد. ٨ آنها آهسته صحبت كردند و ما خوب فهميديم. ٩ آيا آنها را فورا صدا زديد؟ ۱۰ خوشبختانه من یک چتر داشتم.

211

key to the exercises

Exercise 2

1 I suddenly woke up at 3 a.m. and came out of the room quietly. خیلی 2 He was very worried. کوشبختانه – زود 3 Luckily, they got to the airport quickly. خوشبختانه – زود 4 He is still in London. هنوز 5 We came home very late last night. هنوز 6 Have you only got \$10? فقط 7 I like Persian food, especially broad bean rice. هخصوصاً 8 All the restaurants were closed at that time of night. اقلاً – سه روز پیش 10 Our letter arrived at least three days ago. نزدیک 10 Our house is close to the park.

Unit 12

Exercise 1

۱ مریم در آن اتاق خوابیدهاست. ۲ ما هیچوقت به ایران نرفته ایم. ۳ شما قبلاً در آفریقا زندگی کرده اید. ۴ دوستانشان از پاریس رسیده اند or آمده اند. ۵ من در این هتل کوچک مانده ام.

Exercise 2

1 He hasn't been to the office since yesterday. 2 I have been in the park since this morning. 3 I have cooked chicken and vegetables for supper. 4 How long have you lived in Iran? 5 They have gone (been) to Esfahan three times.

Exercise 3

الو منزلِ آقای افشار؟ /شما نسرین خانم هستید؟ من پدرامم. / خیلی ممنون، خویم، بد نیستم. خانم هم حالشون خوبست. الآن فرانسه است، پیشِ مادرش است. / برای یک هفته رفته است. چهار ماه است که مادرش را ندیده. بردارش هم از آمریکا آمده است. همهٔ فامیل حالا آنجا جمع هستند. / ببخشبد، علی منزل است؟ / خداحافظِ شما نسرین خانم. به امیدِ دیدار انشالله.

Unit 13

Exercise 1

۱ او در خانهٔ ما در شیراز زندگی می کرد. ۲ من صبحها درس می خواندم و عصرها کارمی کردم. ۳ تو غذای مارا دوست نداری ولی چای ما را دوست داری. ۴ امروز صبح به رادیو گوش کردیم. ۵ فکر کردند امروز دوشنبه است. ۶ تو وقتیکه مریم را دیدی تع جب کردی. ۷ او تصمیم دشواری گرفت. ۸ آیا ماشین را درست کردی؟ ۹ از سه شنبه تا حالا کارنکرده ام. ۱۰ امیر و مریم در عروسی پری آواز خواندند.

Exercise 2

Three years ago we used to live in Bordeaux, in France. My father was working in a commercial bank and my mother taught piano at the local school. I met several Iranian boys and girls at school. Every weekend we used to either ride bicycles in the side streets or swim in the pool. The mother of one of the Iranian boys used to make us supper every Sunday night. I very much like Persian food. However, my father's job in France came to an end and this summer we returned to London.

Exercise 3

نخیر. شنبه صبح تمامش کار کردم، بعد شب به منزلِ پسرعمویم کنارِ دریاچه رفتم. / نه، حدود ساعتِ نه و نیم رسیدم. شام خوردیم و کمی صحبت کردیم و رفتیم خوابیدیم. / یکشنبه صبح رفتیم به یک بازارِ محلی و بعد گُلف بازی کردیم. من نزدیکِ ساعتِ شش برگشتم منزل. / پسرعمویم همیشه آنجا زندگی می کند.

Unit 14

Exercise 1

١ صدایش را شنیدم. ٢ دوستم این کتابها را از مغازه خرید. ۳ بسته را به منزلمان آوردند. ۴ این گلها را به او داد. ۵ مادر مريم را ديروز نديدم. ۶ همهٔ آن سيبها را خورديم. ۷ كمي غذا برای او بردم. ۸ آنرا به برادرش داد. ۹ دیروز تو را در نانوایی دیدم. چه خریدی؟ ۱۰ این کتاب را نمی خواستی؟ ۱۱ دوست مرا دیدی؟ ۱۲ من آنها را نمی شناسم. ۱۳ آیا اخبار را شنیدهای؟ ۱۴ من آن یکی ماشین را میخواهم. ۱۵ کی این گلها را آورد؟ ۱۶ آدرس شما را به شاگردها دادم. ۱۷ دیروز خوب غذا خوردم. ۱۸ دیروز در خانهٔ خواهرت غذا خوردم. ۱۹ آن شکلات در یخچال را خوردم. ۲۰ آیا فیلم را دوست داشتی؟

Exercise 2

Three years ago I met an Iranian girl at a party in London. Her name is Maryam. Maryam is a photographer and on Tuesdays and Wednesdays she works in a photographic studio. She travels a lot and I don't see her much. Yesterday, after a long time, I saw her at a party at my friend's house. After the usual exchange of niceties and how are you chitchat she said that she has moved (lit. changed) house and lives in West London now. She said that she loves her new flat. Maryam gave me her new address and telephone number. Maryam and her friend Omid have found this flat together. They have painted the walls, changed the wall-to-wall carpet, cleaned the kitchen and planted flowers in its small garden. The window in the bathroom was broken and they have fixed that too. Then, they brought Maryam's stuff to the flat. Omid was also at the party and she introduced him to me. Maryam and Omid had not brought their car and I gave them a lift home after dinner.

Exercise 3

سلام خانم، صبح بخير. من اين كتاب را پنجشنبهٔ پيش خريدم، برای یک دوستم بود ولی این کتاب را دارد. / بله. از همینجا خریدم. / بسیارخوب. دراین صورت آن را با این دو کتاب عوض میکنم. این كتاب دربارهٔ ايران را هم ميخواهم. قيمتش چقدر است؟ 215

key to the exercises

Unit 15

Exercise 1

۱ من هر شنبه به خانهٔ مادرم میروم و او را به سوپرمارکت میبرم. ۲ او در یک آپارتمان بزرگ قشنگ با دو تا گربه زندگی مىكند. ٣ ما هر روز صبح دخترخالهات را توى اتوبوس مىبينيم. ۴ آیا برای مریم یک نامه مینویسی؟ ۵ آنها روز چهارشنبه به مهماني ما مي آيند.

Exercise 2

نشست می نشینیم	آمدند می آیند	گفتم می گویم
نوشتند می نویسند	خوردیم می خوری	گرفتید می گیرم
رفت می روید	خریدیم می خرد	ماندی می مانند
	آوردی می آوری	دیدم می بینم

Unit 17

The shop of Cyrus's father-in-law

Cyrus's father-in-law has a greengrocer's and fruit shop. His shop is in Ferdosi Avenue. In front of the shop there is a narrow pavement and a (water) gutter. Several tall trees and a newspaper kiosk are also in front of the shop. On the righthand side of the shop there is a patisserie and on the left-hand side there is a shoe shop. Opposite the shop, on the other side of the road, there is a hairdresser, a bank and a foreign language teaching college. Above the shop there is a doctor's surgery and behind the shop there is a petrol station. Cyrus's father-in-law works in this shop from early morning till night; however, he sometimes goes to a rice kebab restaurant near the cinema for lunch. Ferdosi Avenue is always busy. It is only quiet in the early morning. There are all sorts of shops in this street: bookshops, photographers, tailors, carpenters, clothes boutiques, jewellers, bakers, butchers, chemists and other shops. Cyrus's father-in-law sells all sorts of vegetables (herbs) and fruits in his shop: parsley, mint, spinach, garlic, pumpkin, onions, aubergines, tomatoes, potatoes, oranges, bananas, grapes, pomegranates, apples, peaches, pears and melon.

Exercise 2

۱ مریم دیشب به خانهٔ ما آمد. ۲ ما با اتوبوس به خانهٔ علی رفتیم. ۳ او گلدان را روی میز گذاشت. ۴ کفشهایش زیرِ میز است. ۵ این آخرِ هفته می خواهم پیشِ مادربزرگم بروم. ۶ کمی غذا در یخچال هست. ۷ فرم را با مداد پُر نکن. ۸ برای تعطیلات (به) کجا می روی؟

Unit 18

Exercise 1

Mr Absent-minded: When Mr Absent-minded was leaving his house in the morning his wife gave him a letter and said: 'Make sure you post this letter today. It's a very important letter. Don't forget.' Mr Absent-minded, however, forgot what his wife had said and did not post the letter (lit. did not throw the letter into the letter box). When he was getting off his bus and rushing off to his office (lit. going to office by running) a gentleman suddenly tapped him gently on the shoulder and said: 'Don't forget the letter!' Mr Absent-minded was very surprised and put the letter in the postbox and went on towards his office. En route, a beautiful woman suddenly said to him: 'Sir, don't forget your letter.' This time Mr Absent-minded stopped and said in astonishment: 'Dear God! How do these people know that I have to post a letter? I posted it a few minutes ago!' The woman laughed in response and said: 'In that case, please remove this note from your back.' On the note was written: 'Please tell my husband not to forget the letter.'

Exercise 2

۱ میخواهند شما را فردا شب ببینند. ۲ نمیتوانم امشب به کلاس فارسیم بروم. ۳ امیدواریم که تابستان آینده یک خانهٔ بزرگتر بخریم. ۴ او هم میخواست به شیراز سفربکند (سفرکند). ۵ لطفا پیشازاینکه به منزلش بروید تلفن بکنید.

Unit 19

Exercise 1

۱ فردا صبح شما را خواهم دید. ۲ آیا با اتوبوس مسافرت خواهندکرد یا با ترن؟ ۳ او هفتهٔ آینده این نامه را خواهدنوشت و آنرا به من خواهدداد. ۴ وقتیکه از پاریس برگردند به ما تلفن خواهنددد. ۵ بزودی یک خانهٔ بزرگتر خواهیمخرید.

Exercise 2

1 I will go to Iran next week and will stay in Tehran for three months. 2 They will definitely write this letter this afternoon. 3 When will you go to your sister's house? 4 We will give your message to Babak. 5 In how many hours' time will you finish your work with the computer (*lit*. will your work finish with the computer)?

Exercise 3

سعی میکنم فرداشب آنرا تمام کنم، ولی نمیتوانم قول بدهم. شما فرداشب منزل هستید؟ / آن واقعاً کمک بزرگی خواهد بود. من حدود ساعت نه و نیم، بعداز شام میآیم پیشتون.

Unit 20

Exercise 1

۱ خواهرم پارسال به ایتالیا رفت و خیلی به او خوش گذشت. ۲ از این رنگ خوشم نمی آید ولی آن آبی قشنگ است. ۳ یادت رفت که دیروز به مریم تلفن بزنی. ۴ ما میخواهیم اخبار ساعت ده را نگاه کنیم ولی من خیلی خوابم می آید. ۵ آنها توی ترن خوابشان برد و مناظر زیبا را ندیدند.

Exercise 2

1 They dislike (loathe) this part of the city. 2 Why do you always fall asleep at talks? 3 Whenever we go to Iran we have a lovely time. 4 I can't remember (it has slipped my mind) whether I have a dentist's appointment tomorrow or the day after. 5 He likes Persian music.

Exercise 3

بعله! من عاشق موسیقی ایرانی هستم. چطور مگر؟ / من حتماً میآیم. کنسرت کدام شبست؟ / یکدنیا ممنون. بعداز شام برویم یک رستوران ایرانی آن نزدیکیهاست. / بسیارخوب، پس من یک میز برای هشت نفر، برای ساعت ده و نیم رزرو میکنم.

Unit 21

There are books in which we can find the answers to different questions. We call these books dictionaries and encyclopaedias. In these books, phrases and names are printed in bold letters in alphabetical order and each one is given a detailed explanation in ordinary print. Encyclopaedias are usually textbooks in which we can find all sorts of scientific, literary, art, historical, geographic and other information. Some encyclopaedias are published in several volumes.

		TERRITORY TRUE STRUCTURES
water	الف آب	they have اِجارِه دادن rented out
nere, that plac	آب اُنار	permission اجازه
pomegranate juice	اب ادار	brick آجر
they extract	آب میگیرند	respect laring
the juice		hello, how are احواليرسى
fruit juice	آب میوه	you, exchange of niceties
cloud	ابر	
eyebrow	ابرو	last, in the end
cloudy	ابری	the last
silk	ابريشم	office
blue	آبی	manners, politeness ادب
apartment	آيارتمان	ادبی literary, formal prose
nelve of to he	أتاق	address آدرس
room		gradually, 'slowly, آرام آرام
bedroom	اُتاق خواب	slowly', 'calmly,
bus	أتوبوس	calmly'
rent	إجاره	mausoleum آرامگاه
to rent	إجاره كردن	beauty salon آرایشگاه

cheap	ارزان	kitchen	آشپزخانه
maxim	آرمان	mistake	إشتباه
informal yes, 'yu	p' آره	to make mistakes	إشتباه كردن
from, of, through	اَز م	tears	اشک
since	از وقتیکه،	familiar	آشنا
	از زمانیکه	to become	آشنا شدن
to get married	ازدواج كردن	acquainted	
experiment, test	آزمایش	information	إطلاعات
easy	آسان	often	أغلب
horse	اَسب	sun	آفتاب
equipment, furni	ture اسباب	sunny	آفتابی
Spain	اسپانیا	gentleman, sir	آقا
is	أست	period of stay,	اقامت
master, teacher	أستاد	residency	
DECOMPOSE HOLD	استراحت	economy	اقتصاد
rest	CHI S CONTRACTOR	ocean	أقيانوس
to use, to benefit from	اِستفاده کردن	now	اكنون
hour glass-shaped	استكان ا	now	الأن
tea glasses		of course	اَلبَتِه
studio	استوديو	Germany	آلمان
spinach	اسفناج،	bangles	اَلَنگو
name, title	أسم	now	اما
(lit. family name)	اسم فاميل	examination	امتحان
surname	calculy	to come, arrive	آمدن
sky	آسمان	order, command,	request اُمن
cook, chef	آشپز	today	امروز

this year	امسال	to bring, fetch	آوردن
tonight	امشب	first	أوَل
college	آموزشگاه	stop (as in bus	ایستگاه
hope	أميد	stop), station	Sidney (Said
I hope	أميدواركم	they	ایشان
that	آن س	this	این
the other one	آن یکی دیگر	here	اينجا
pomegranate	أنار	future, next	آيندِه
to choose	انتخاب كردر		
there, that place	آنجا و	SERVICE STORY DO LESSES	ب.
fig	أنجير	with, by	باللفائدة
size, amount	اَندازه	despite the fact th	با اینکه at
little, a bit	اندک	despite the fact that	با وجوديكه
as if	اِنگار	loyal, faithful	با وفا
finger (or toe)	انگشت	father	بابا
ring	اَنگشتر	to lose	باختن
grape	اَنگور	wind	باد
they (their, them	آنها	eggplant, aubergi	ne بادنجان
as possessor)		rain	باران المان
slow, slowly	آهسته	rainy	بارانی
native of; to have a liking for sth.	اُهل	narrow, slender	باریک
importance,	أهميت	open	باز
significance	yes	to open	باز کردن
he or she	او	bazaar, market	بازار
to sing	آواز خواندن	game, play	بازی

ancient باستانی	to take, carry away بردن
garden باغ	برف snow
باغ وَحش	برفی snowy
small garden باغچه	electricity برق
up بالا	electric برقی
further up بالاتر	برنز bronze
clever, bright باهوش	large, big, great بُزُرگ
excuse me, ببخشيد!	ہُزُرگتر bigger
forgive me	higgest, largest بزرگترین
tiger , , ,	to tie up, wrap; بستن
بچگی childhood, childlike behaviour	to close, shut
	icecream بستنى
replace, بچه بخاری دیواری	parcel بسته
open fire	to your health بسلامتی
bad	many, much, very بسیار
unfortunate, unlucky بدبخت	plate بُشقاب
unfortunately بدبختانه	then, next
smelly, pungent بدبو	later بعداً
nasty, mean, deceitful بدجنس	afternoon بعداً زظُهر
revolting (in taste) بدمزه	next بعدی
without بدون	grocer's shop بقالی
بر گُشتن to return	tall, high بُلُنَد
brother برادر brother	yes
برای for	ticket بليط
برخی some	purple بَنَفْش

to	به	most of, many of	بيشتر
instead of	به جای	[followed by an ezafe	? (e)]
with difficulty	به دشواری	more	بيشتر
to be born	به دُنيا آمدن	sick, unwell; patient	بيمار
by force, forcibly		nospitai	بیمارست :
grudgingly	به زحمت	nose	بيتى
as pretty as	به قشنگی		
sign of exclamati			پ
(meaning wond lovely)	erful,	foot; leg	با مام
spring	بُهار	lit. favourite meeting- up place, where peop	
better	بِهِتْر	hang out	
to be	بودن ا	cloth, material	پارچه
kiss	بوسه	last year	پارسال
unfaithful, disloy	بی وفا yal	park	پارک
rude, uncouth	بی ادب	carpark	<mark>پارکینگ</mark>
for no good reas	بى خود- ,on,	answer, reply	پاسخ
pointlessly	بی خودی	overcoat, winter coat	بالتو
if it's no trouble please	بی زحمت ,	capital city	ہایتخت
unemployed;	بی کار	autumn	باييز
not busy	untally - Sh	down, below	بايين
undoubtedly	بيترديد	to cook	بختن
poor thing,	بيچاره	father	بدر
wretched		grandfather	بدربزرگ
outside	بيرون	father-in-law	درزن
outside	بيرون-خارج	(wife's father)	

father-in-law (husband's father)	پدرشوهر	plaque, door numb	er پلاک
		window	پنجره
full of	پُراُز	Thursday	پنجشنبه
to fill	پر کردن	cheese	پنیر اس
oranges	پرتقال	next to, beside	يَهلوي
chatting too much	پُرچربی	wide	نهن
chatterbox	پرحرف	a dela del	vateur ka
obnoxious, bolshy	پررو	winter snowboots	پوتین
question	پرسش	skin	پوست
bird, fowl	پَرَنده	to wear	پوشیدن
		money	پول
	پرواز کرد	rich, wealthy	پولدار
butterfly	پروانه	continously	پیاپی
to jump	پريدن	on foot	پیاده
day before yesterday	پريروز		2.5
physician, doctor	پزشک	sidewalk,	پیاده رو
so, in that case,	پُس	pavement	
therefore, then		going for a walk	پیاده روی
to take back, get	پس گرفتر	onion	پیاز
back, retrieve		message	پیام
day after tomorrow	پس فردا	to find	پیدا کردن
to post ن	پست کرد	old	پیر
postman	پستچی	shirt; dress	پیراهن
post office	پستخانه	to (used for people:	ييش
boy, son	پسر	going to s.o.); at	oodudaanele i
back, behind	پشت	before, prior to	پیش از
one after the other	پشتِ سرِ	message	پیغام

established, beauty for	ت
until, up to	تاریخ و و و و اولیدی
as long as	تا وقتيكه
theatre	تئاتر
summer	تابستان
date; history	تاريخ
historic	تاريخى
dark	تاریک
fresh	تازِه
hill	تپه اندازوا.
trade	تجارت
bed	تختخواب
reduction, disco	unt تخفیف
to give discount	تخفیف دادن
eggs	تُخمِ مُرغ
wet	ד ر
scales	ترازو
order	ترتيب
hesitation, reluc	تردید tantly
fear	ترس
coward, scared	ترسو
sour	تُرش تُرش
to leave; give up	ترک کردن

to decide (lit. تصمیم گرِفتن take decisions)
exchange of niceties تُعارُف
to be surprised تَعَجُب كردن
to describe, give عریف detailed account
closed, shut تعطیل
holidays, vacation تعطيلات
approximately, nearly تقريباً
bitter
تلفن telephone
to make a call, / تلفن کردن telephone
تلوزیون television
to watch, look at تماشاکردن
all of the تُمامِ
to finish, complete تمام کردن
تمبر stamp
practice, exercises
to practise تمرین کردن
rlean
to clean تمیز کردن
lazy تنبُل
spicy, hot تند
fast, quick; تُند fast, quickly

alone	تُنها	island	جُزيره
to; you (sing.)	تو	party, celebration	جشن ب
to be able to	توانستن	festival	جشنواره
ball	توپ	box	جَعبِه
to explain ن.	توضيح داد	parsley	جَعفرى
birth (also birthday)	تُوَلُد (geography	جغرافي
inside, into	توى	pair; mate	جفت
		cover for books; volu	ame جلد
	ప	meetings,	جلسات
seconds	ثانیه	sessions (pl.)	
		meeting, one session	جلسه
	ε	front	جلو
place	جا	prevention	جلوگیری
places (pl.)	جا ها	in front of, by	جلوی
spacious	جادار	Friday	جمعه
vacuum cleaner	جاروبرقي	population	جَمعييت
interesting	جالب	republic	جُمهوري
soul, life, term	جان	war	جنگ
of endearment after proper names		forest	جنگل
TO SPECIAL		south	جُنوب
some places (indefinite pl.)	جاهایی	world	جَهان
where	جاييكه	tourist	جهانگرد
really, seriously	أعج	reply	جواب
new	جُديد	young; youth (person	جوان (
apart	جز	jewellery	جواهر

chicken, baby bird	جوجه	hammer	چَکُش
type, kind	جور	several, a few	rein tel el siş
socks	جوراب	how many?	چَند تا
	3	a few weeks ago	چَند هَفته پیش
fat	چاق	how many?	چند؟
kitchen or other	چاقو	several	چندين
types of knife	Result Albert	fork	چنگال چنگال
chin	چانه	what kind?, sor	چه جور؟ (t
tea	چای	what year?	چه سالی؟
left	A bir i finit a	what did you do?	چِه می کردید؟
umbrella	چتر	what!; how!	چه!
why?	چرا؟	what?	ڊه؟
light, lamp	چراغ	four	چهار
stuck down	چسباندن	inside, within	چهار شنبه
eyes	چشم	Wednesday	
ophthalmic	چشمپزشک	fourth	چهارم
physician		wooden	چویی
spring	چشمه	because	چون
how was it?	چطور بود؟	because	چونکه
why? why do you ask? (idiomatic)	چِطور مَگَر	what	چی؟
how? how come?	چطور؟	something	چیزی
			7
how are you?	چطوری؟	novy proceeds	حالا
how	چقدر	now, presently	í -
how much? how lo	چقدر؟ ?gno	definitely	حنما

even	حتى	news	غبر ا
letters of alphabet;	حرف	to have news	خبر داشتن
spoken word		funeral	خُتم
to speak, talk	حرف زدن	goodbye, farewell	خداحافظ
profession	حرفه	god bless, goodbye	خدانگهدار ,
letters (pl.)	حروف	farewell	
bath, bathroom	حمام	to go off;	خراب شدن
what a pity,	حيف	to break down	
what a shame		sweet melon	خريزه
animal	حيوان	small change	خُرد
		a bit, just a little,	خُرده
	ż	a touch	Silveria
outside	خارج از	rabbit	خرگوش
foreign, foreigner	خارجي	to buy	خريدن
dust, earth, soil	خاک	the Caspian	خُزُر
grey	خاکستری	tired	خسته
maternal aunt	خاله	dry, arid	خُشک
switched off,	خاموش	with enmity, angril	خصمانه y
silent, dark		private,	خُصوصى
home made	خانگی	confidential	
lady, madam, term	خانم	line	خط
of address for wor	nen	danger	خطر
house, home	خانه	dangerous	خطرناک
family	خانواده	quiet, free of people	خلوت ع
Middle East	خاورميانه	Persian Gulf	خُليجِ فارس
caviar	خاويار	toothpaste	خميردندان

funny (lit. with laughter from cool خُنْک he dormitory, hall of residence do to sleep singer sister to ask politely, خواهر request good, nice, pleasant مخودكار biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen مخودنویس خودنویس خودنویس خودنویس خودنویس from six	meet you agrant, nice
cool خُنگ h. dormitory, hall خوابگاه p of residence d to sleep خوابیدن b singer خواننده sister to ask politely, خواهر request good, nice, pleasant مخودکار خودکار b biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen خودنویس	agrant, nice
dormitory, hall مخوابگاه p of residence to sleep خوابیدن b singer خواننده sister to ask politely, خواهش کردن request good, nice, pleasant مخودکار خودکار biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen خودنویس خودنویس	
of residence to sleep singer sister to ask politely, خواهر request good, nice, pleasant biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen d d d b d d b d b d b d b b	appy, cheers
to sleep خوابیدن b singer خواننده sister خواهر to ask politely, خواهش کردن request good, nice, pleasant خودکار biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen خودنویس خودنویس	retty
singer خواهر sister خواهر خواهر to ask politely, خواهش کردن nequest good, nice, pleasant خودکار biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen	elicious, tas
sister خواهر خواهر to ask politely, خواهش کردن nrequest sigood, nice, pleasant white, ballpoint sections.	lood
to ask politely, خواهش کردن nrequest good, nice, pleasant خودکار biro, pen, ballpoint fountain pen خودنویس	treet, avenue
request good, nice, pleasant خوب الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	ailor's, dress
وood, nice, pleasant بخوب v biro, pen, خودكار ballpoint fountain pen خودنویس	nind, imagin
biro, pen, خودكار ballpoint fountain pen خودنویس	nuch, very, i
	ery good
to eat; to drink غوردن i	
	nside, within
to have had خوش گذشتن t	o give
a good time	hemist, pha
polite, pleasant خوش و بش	tory, accoun
exchanges	not
welcome خوش آمد	oridegroom
خوش آمدید you are welcome	ret .
kind, honest, خوش جنس	skirt
	outskirts
fortunate, happy خوشبخت	to know
luckily, خوشبختانه fortunately	student

I'm happy to meet you	خوشبختم
fragrant, nice smell	خوشبو ing
happy, cheerful	خوشحال
pretty	خوشگل
delicious, tasty	خوشموزه
blood	خون
street, avenue	خيابان
tailor's, dressmaker	خیاطی s'r
mind, imagination	خيال
much, very, many	خیلی
very good	خیلی خوب
	3
inside, within	داخِل
to give	دادن
chemist, pharmacy	داروخانه
story, account of	داستان
hot	داغ
bridegroom	داماد
vet	دامپزشک
skirt	دامن
outskirts	دامنه
to know	دانستن

university	دانشگاه	sea	دريا الماد
circle	دايره	lake	درياچه
encyclopaedia	دايره المعارف	very big	دریای خیلی بُزُرگ
maternal uncle	دایی	sea	
girl, daughter	دختر	hand	دست
cousin; daught	er of دخترخاله	bracelet	دستبند ,
maternal aun	t	difficult	دُشوار
in, at, inside	دُر	to tell off,	دعوا كردن
door, gate	دُر الله في طائعها	rebuke, arg	
to get or take	درآوردن	to invite	دعوت كردن
something ou	t,	stand, kiosk	دکه
bring out		brave	دلير
while	در حالیکه	next to, near	دَم
to knock	در زدن	time to time	دمادم
percentage	در صد	to look for,	دنبالگشتن
long	دراز	search for	Martines 12 of
about	دربارهٔ	teeth	دندان
to be printed,	درج شدن	dentist	دندانپزشک
published		dental techni	دندانساز cian
tree	درخت	world	دُنيا
lesson	درس	mouth	دهان
to study	درس خواندن	tenth	دهم
correct, right, e		two or three	دو سه ساعت
to fix, mend	دُرُست کردن	hours	Applements.
greetings	درود .	Monday	دو شنبه
inside	درون - داخل	again	دوياره

bicycle دوچرخه	way, path, road داه
far, faraway دور	corridor, hallway راهرو
دوربین binoculars	name of legendary رُخش
photographic دوربین عکاسی camera	horse to pass by; to fail رد شدن
friend دوست	rose sú
to like دوست داشتن	to deliver; to give رساندن
friendly دوستانه	a lift
وولت government	official رسمی
second	to arrive, reach
to see دیدن	to go
yesterday ديروز	pal, close friend, رفیق
late ديروقت	comrade
last night ديشَب	رقصیدن to dance
no longer (with nega- دیگر	colour, shade, dye
tive verb), no more	to paint, colour in رنگ زدنا
دیگر other	کردن اور
	visa
-white reduct	river رودخانه
(direct object marker) ا	day iso
راحت comfortable	daily روزانه
to be relieved, راحت شدن	ووزبخیر good day
become comfortable	newspaper روزنامه
radio رادیو	newsagent's روزنامه
straight, true, right راست	فروشى
to drive کردن	روس Russian

light, bright,	روشن	olives	زيتون
switched on		under, beneath	زير
oil	روغن	ashtray	زیرسیگاری
on, on top of	روی		
beard	ریش ا		<u>س</u>
		question	سؤال
	io delivera	building	ساختمان
language (tongue)	زبان	to build, make,	ساختن
rough	زير	construct	government
Zoroastrian	زرتُشتی	(here) o'clock,	ساعت
yellow	زرد	hour of	
clever	زِرُنگ	four o'clock	ساعت چهار
ugly	زِشت	quiet, silent	ساكت
earthquake	زلزله	year	سال
winter	زمستان	year(s) ago	سالِ پیش
ground, floor,	زمین	healthy	سالم مصوره
earth, land		(lit. salon) hall,	سالُن
surface, land	زمینی	big room	
wife, woman	نن	basket	، سَبَد
wasp	زنبور	green	سبز
honey bee	زنبورعسل	herbs	سبزى
life	زندگی	green grocer's	سبزى فروشى
ن to live	زندگی کرد	vegetables	سبزيجات
soon, early	زود	vegetarian	سبزيخوار
much, very	زياد	moustache	سبيل الدر ١١٦٦
pretty (beautiful)	زيبا	grateful	سهاسگزار

then	سپس	needle	سوزن
star	ستاره	beetle	سوسک
difficult	سُخت	political	سیاسی
speech, delivered	سخنراني	black	سياه
lecture		apple	سيب ما مد
at the head of, at the top of, at	hrolbg "w	potato	سیب زمین
head	سُ	garlic	سیر/ ۱۹۹۵
red, crimson	سرخ	full, satiated	سير (مالا
cold	ر المراد الم	cinema	سينما
speed	سرعت	tray	سینی
hobby	سرگرمی		
cold (noun)	سرما		m
embassy	سفارت	branch, stem	شاخِه
special, registered	سفارشي	happy	شاد
travel, journey	سفر	poet	شاعِر
to travel	سفر کردن	supper, dinner	شام
bon voyage	سفريخير	comb; shoulders	شانه
white	سفيد	perhaps	شايد
dog	سک	night	شب
hello	سلام	goodnight	مب بخیر
hairdresser's, barbo	er سلمانی	brave, courageous	شجاع
heavy	سَنگين	personal, private	شخصى
Sunni	سُنی	to become; to happ	en شدن
Tuesday	سِه شُنبِه	to begin, start	شروع شدن
riding	سوارى	to wash	شُستن

poetry	شعر	(lit. Satan) naughty	شیطان ۳
sugar	شکر	Shi'ite	شيعه
to break	شكستن		
broken	شكسته		ص داد
chocolate	شكلات	owner;	صاحبخانه
trousers	شلوار	landlord/lady	acad arigas soa ade s
busy, crowde	شُلوغ d	morning	صبع
you (pl.)	شما شما	good morning	صبح بخير
number	شماره	breakfast	صبحانه
telephone	شمارة تلفن	stage	صَحنه
number		hundred	صد
north	شُمال	sound, noise	صدا
northeast	شُمالِ شَرقى	peace	صلُح
northern	شُمالی	chair	صندکی
to recognize	شناختن	pink	صورتى
to swim	شناكردن		
Saturday	شنبه مصورات		ط
to hear	شنيدن	melon	طالبي
city, cities	شهر(.pl) شُهرها	level, floor	طبقه
salty, savoury	شور	nature	طبيعت
husband	شوهر	designer	طُراح
milk	شير	side, direction	طُرَف
sweet	شيرين	supporter	طرفدار
confectionery	شيرينى	golden	طلایی
glass	شيشه	long	طولانی
			عرد عی

Per le la	glasses
عالى excellent, superb	
bride ace	edges of next to,
عروسک doll	food اغذا
عروسى wedding	west غرب
dear عزيز	غربی western
my dear عزيزم	sorrow, grief غصه
honey عسل	et al., etc., and others غيره
aشق awi	
romantic, lovey-dovey	emply very servicemental state
angry عصبانی	French éclime
anger عصبانیت	to provide; to فراهم آمدن
afternoon tea, snack عصرانه	bring together
agood afternoon عصربخیر	فردا tomorrow
back بقع	فرِستادن to send
عکاس photographer	
عکاسی photography	form فرم
عکس photograph	to sell فروختن
scientific علمي	airport فرودگاه
paternal aunt	store, department فروشگاه store
paternal uncle	only
عمومی public	poor فقير
عوض کردن to change,	thought, idea فكر
exchange, replace	to think فکر کُردُن
عید religious or traditional celebration	pepper

cup	فنجان		ک
film	فيلم	present, gift	كادو
	ق	jobs, work, thing keep one busy	s that کار
spoon	قاشق	to be busy, to ha	کار داشتن ve
small rugs	قالی قالیچِه	to work	کار کردن کارت
old (not for peop	قدیمی (ple قرار	postcard	کارت پستال
arrangement red, crimson	قرمز	factory cutlery knife	کارخانه کارد
century	قَرن	workshop	کارگاه
beautiful	قَشَنگ	worker, labourer	کارگر
butcher's	قصابى	employee (here cas	کارمند (hier
train	قطار	bowl	كاسه
thick	قُطور	if only, would that	کاشt
lock	قُفل	to plant, sow	كاشتن
heart	قُلب	paper	كاغذ
pen	قَلَم	sufficient, enough	کافی
coffee	قهوه	garlic sausage, mortadella	كالباس
brown	قهوه ای	matches	كبريت
coffee house	قهوه خانه	book	كتاب
teapot	قورى	library	كتابخانه
scissors	قیچی	books	كتب
price, value	قیمت	kettle	کتر <i>ی</i>

where?	کجا؟	a little	کمی
where in?	کُجای؟	rare	كمياب
from where? (re nationality)	کجایی؟	edges of, next to, on the banks of	كنار
which?	كُدام؟	that	که
marrow, courgette	كُدو	old (as in rags)	كُهنه
pumpkin	كدو تنبل	short (brief)	كوتاه
butter	کَرِه	smaller	كوچكتر
sphere	کُرہ	sidestreet	کوچه
someone; no one	کسی	tiny, very small	كوچولو
(with negative ver	b)	child	كوبك
ship	کشتی	mountain	کوه
country	كيشور	mountainside	كوهستان
shoeshop	كفاشي	nimountainous	كوهستاني
hat	کلاہ	when?	کِی؟
cottage, a small ho		who, whom?	کی؟
thick	كُلُفت	bag	كيف
word	كلمه	cake	کیک
key	كليد		Swalin at their
church	كليسا		2 Months
little	کم	sometimes	گاهی
low-fat	کم چربی	to put, place;	گُذاشتن
comedy	کُمدی	to allow	colation
belt	كمربند	to pass by	گذَشتن
shy, bashful	كمرو	cat	گریه
to help, assist	کمک کردن	neck	گردن

hungry	گُرُسنه		- Senat U
to grab, catch	گرفتن ,	thin, skinny	لاغر
take	a man da aseta	tulips	لاله
warm (hot)	گرم	lip	لبُّرة معندسها
heat	گرما	clothing	لباس
necklace	گرنبند است	please	لطفأ
in tears, tearfu	الا کریان ally	dictionary	لغتنامه
tears	گریه	lemon	ليمو
to cry	گریه کردن	glass, tumbler	ليوان
to say, tell	گفت <i>ن</i>		
flower (arch. r	roses) گُل		P
to plant flower	الله کاشتن rs	we, us	ما
rosewater	كُلاب	noisy kiss	ماچ
pear	گُلابی	grandmother	مادربزرگ
flowerpot, vase		mother-in-law (wife's mother)	مادرزن
florist	گلفروشی	mother-in-law	مادرشوهر
throat	كُلُو	(husband's moth	
kelim rugs	كليم	yoghurt	ماست
tomato	گوجه فرنگی	car	ماشين
sheep	گوسفَند	mama, mummy	مامان
ear	گ وش	to remain, stay	ماندن
to listen	گوش کردن or	month; moon	ماه
	گوش دادن	honeymoon	ماه عسل
meat; flesh	گوشت	fish	ماهی
earring	كوشواره	tuna fish	ماهى تُن

congratulations!	مبارك!	marble	مرمر
grateful	متشكر	pearl	مرواريد
various	مُتعَدد	surface area,	مساحت
like, similar to	مثل	expanse	bilangs
example, for instance	مَثُلا	traveller, passe	
triangle	مُثْلَث	to travel	مسافرت كردن
free	مجاني	equal	مساوی
statue	محسمه	mosque	مسجد المسجد
	مطه	Muslim	مسلمان
magazine		toothbrush	مسواک
well equipped	مجهر	Christian	مُسيحيانِ
area, neighbourhood, district	محله		(pl. of مسیحی
varied, different	مختلف	alcoholic drin	
	مداد	difficult; prob	مشکل lem
pencil		to consult	مشورت كردن
duration	مدت	surgery	مطب
for a long while	مدتها	certain, sure	مطمئن
school	مدرِسه	temple	معبد المصالح
jam	مريا	to introduce	معرفى كردن
square	مريع	famous	معروف
related, connected	مربوط	teacher, instru	معَلَم actor
man	مرد	usual	معمول
people	مَردُم	common	معمولى
merci, thank you	مرسى	shop	مُغِازه
bird, hen, chicken	مُرغ	detailed	مُفْصِلَ
centre	مركز	shrine	مقبره

but	مَگُر	Christian era (BCE)	میلادی
nationality	مليت	monkey	ميمون
possible	ممكن		
grateful	ممنون		فأدد عنسناه
me, mine, my	مُن	uncomfortable	ناراحت
to be waiting	منتظر بودن	orange colour	نارنجى
for s.t.	1.1	thin, fine	نازک
home, house	منزِل	to be called sth.,	نام داشتن
house warming		named sth.	entrajian:
region .	منطقه	fiancé(e)	نامزد
view	منظره	letter	نامه
moonlight	مهتاب	bread	نان
kind	مهریان	bakery	نانوایی
important	مهم	lunch	ناهار
party	مِهمانی	not to be	نَبودَن
hair	مو	carpenter's	نجارى
to be careful,	مواظب بودن	thread	نغ
ant	مورچه	polite no	نُخير
banana	موز	rate, price	نرخ
museum	موزه	narcissus	نرگس
music	موسيقى	soft, smooth	نرم
mouse	موش	near by, close to	نَزدیک
wall-to-wall carp	oet موکت	relatively	نسبتا
carnation	میخک	directions, address	نِشانی
desk, table	ميز	to sit	نشستن

half	نِصف		i innome.
saucer	نعلبكي	to enter	وارد شدن
mint	نعناع	wild	وحشى
oil	نَفت	sport	ورزش
persons	نَفَر	athlete, sporty	ورزشكار
painter	نَقاش	person	
painting	نقاشى	entrance; arrival	ورود
cash	نَقد	weight	ونن
silver	نُقره ای	expanse, surface a	erea وسعت
to look at	نگاه کردن	means, tools	وسيله
anxious, worried,	نگران	time	وُقت
concerned	and the former	to have time	و قت داشتن
salt	نُمُک	when, at the time	وقتى that
no	نه	when عيكه	وقتيكه – موة
neither nor	نه نه		- زمانیکه
light	نور	punctual	وقتشناس
first day of Persian	نوروز	lukewarm	وِلرم
New Year	10150719 .	however, but	وُلی
drink	نوشابه	visa	ويزا
to write	نوشتن		
to drink	نوشيدن		poinsgame.
type	نوع	present	هدیه ادمی
grandchild	نوه	wherever	هر جاییکه
writer	نویسنده	all sorts, kinds	هُر جور
half	نيم	both of us	هردو
hemisphere	نیمکُره	whichever	هر كدامكه

whoever	هر کس که or	colleague	همكار
	هرکسیکه	classmate	ممكلاس
whenever	هر وقتيكه	all	همه
as soon as possible	هرچه زودتر	always	همیشه ت
everyday	ه رروز	as soon as	همینکه
never	م رگز	India	مند، مندوستان
thousand	ه زار	water melon	هندوانه
seven	هُفت	art	هنر
seventh	هَفتُم	artistic	هنری
week	مفته	still, as yet	هنوز
	ملو	weather (also a	ir) هُوا
peach		aeroplane	هُواپيما
also, too	A 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	air	هوایی
roommate	هم اتاق	never	هيچوقت
with common border, shari	ing		
the same bor			ی
that very	همان	either or	يايا
there (and the	n) اممانجا	to teach	یاد دادن
just as, as	همانطوريكه	to learn	یاد گرِفتن
companion	همراه	eleven	يازده
neighbour	هُمسایِه	ice	يخ
	(.pl همسایگان)	frozen	يخ زده
spouse	aam (fridge	يخچال
fellow travelle	همسفر ۲	each other	یکدیگر
fellow citizen	همشهری	lit. one day	يكروز

one year	يكسال
Sunday	يكشنبه
one of	یکی اَز
one by or	یکی یکی ae
Jewish	یهودی pl. یهودیان
slowly, qu	يواش aietly
Greece	يونان

	Rich Handel			
T	a little	کمی – یک کم	anger انیّت	خَشم – عَصبَ
T	about	دربارهٔ	angry مبانی	خَشمگین – عَم
O	address	آدرس – نِشانی	animal وَر	حيوان - جان
7		هواپيما	answer, reply	پاسُخ - جُواب
S	afternoon صر	بعدازطُهر – عَم	ant	مورچه
0	afternoon tea, si	عصرانه nack	anxious	نگران
3	again	دوياره	apart	بغير از
-	air	هوا	apartment	آپارتمان
0	airport	فُرودگاه	apple	سيب
0	alcoholic drinks	مَشروب	appointment,	قُرار – قرار
S	all	هُمه	arrangement	مُلاقات
S	all of the	همة - تُمامِ	approximately,	تُقريبا ً-
9	all sorts,	همه جور –	nearly	نزدیک به
7	kinds of	همه نوع	area, neighbour-	محله –
<	alone	تَنها	hood, district	همسایگی
	also, too	هُمچنین، نیز	art	مُنْر
	always	هُميشه	artistic	هُنُرمَند
	ancient انی	قديمي - باست	arrive, reach (to)	رِسيدَن

SHUTE TO SHO

as if	اِنگار	basket
as long as	تا رقتیکه –	bath (tub)
	تا زمانیکه	bathroom
as pretty as	به قشنگی	bazaar, m
as soon as	تا – به محضِ اینکه	be (to)
Carlette.		be able to
as soon as possible	هرچه زودتر	be born (
ashtray	زیرسیگاری	be busy, l
ask politely, request (to)	خواستُن	be called be name
at last, in the end	آخر - بالاخره	be carefu
at the head of, top of, at	at the سرِ	be printed
athlete, sporty person	ورزِشكار	be relieve become
autumn	پاییز – خُزان	comfort
eds.	nd end	be surpri
back 4	پُشت – عَقَب – تُ	be waitin
back, behind	پشتِ سرِ	for s.t.
bad	(ot) foursemon (to)	beard
bag	كيف	beautiful
bakery	نانوایی	बह्य
ball	توپ صورها	beauty sa
banana	موز اَلَنگو	because
bangles	اَلَنگو	SERGE S

Dasket	
bath (tub)	وان حمام
bathroom	حُمام
bazaar, market	بازار
be (to)	بودَن
be able to (to)	تُوانِستَن
be born (to)	به دنیا آمدَن
be busy, have things to do (t	کارداشتن (o)
be called s.t., be named s.t.	نام داشتن (to)
be careful, cautious (to)	مُواظِب بودن
be printed, تُشر be published (CHARLES THE PARTY OF THE PARTY
be relieved, become comfortable (1	راحَت شُدن to)
be surprised (to	تُعَجُب كردن (ر
be waiting for s.t. (to)	مُنتَظِر شُدَن
beard	نان
beautiful	زیبا – قَشَنگ – ناز
beauty salon	آرایشگاه – سالز زیبایی
because	زيرا – چونکه –

برای اینکه

become, happen (to)
become acquainted آشنا شُدن (to)
bed تختخواب
أتاقخواب bedroom
beetle سوسک
پیشازاینکه – before, prior to قبل ازاینکه
begin, start (to) شُروع کردن
belt کَمَرِینَد
بهتر – خوبتر better
bicycle دوچرخه
higger بُزُرگتَر
biggest, largest بزرگترین
دوربین binoculars
bird, fowl پَرَنده - مُرغ
bird, hen, مرغ – جوجه chicken
biro, pen, ballpoint خودكار
birth (also birthday) تَوَلُد
bitter تَلخ
black سیاه
خون blood
آبی
bon voyage سَفَر بِخير
book کتاب

books	کُتُب – کتاب ها
both of us L	هر دو – هردوی
bowl	كأسه – پياله
bowi	جعبه ۲۳۳ ۲۹
boy, son	پِسُر
bracelet	دَستبَند
branch, stem	شاخه
brave	شُجاع – دَلير
bread	نان
break (to)	شكستَن
breakfast	صُبحانه
brick	آجُر
bride	عُروس
bridegroom	داماد
bring, fetch (to	آوَردُن (
broken	شكسته
brother	بَرَادَر
brown	قُهوهای
build, make,	ساختن
construct (to)	
building	ساختمان - بنا
bus	أتوبوس
busy, crowded	شُلوغ
but	اُما - ولى
butcher's	قُصاب

butter	کرہ
butterfly	پُروانه
buy (to)	خُريدن
by force, forcibly (also grudgingly)	به زور
take ثيرينى	کیک – ن
capital city	پایتُخت
· اتومبيل – car	ماشین – نَفَربَر
card	كارت
carnation	گلِ میخک
carpark	پارکینگ
carpenter	نُجار
carpentry	نُجارى
دالى carpet	فرش – ف
carpet (wall to wall)	موكيت
cash	پولِ نَقد
Caspian	خُزُر
cat	گریه
caviar	خاويار
centre	مرکز
century	قرن
certain, sure	مطمئن – داشتن
chair	صندکی

change, exchange, replace (to)	عوض كردن
chatterbox - z!	پُرِحُرف – وِر پُرچانه
cheap	اُرزان
وشحال cheerful	شادمان – خ
cheese	پَنیر
chemist, pharmac	داروخانه y
chicken, baby bire	جوجه b
child	بَچه – فَرزَند
childhood	بَچِگی
childlike behaviou	بچگانه ar
chin	چانه
chocolate	شكلات
choose (to)	إنتخاب كردن
Christian	مسيحى
Christian era (BCE	میلادی (
church	كليسا
cinema	سينما
	دايره – محفِر
city, cities	شهر – شهرهـ
classmate	همكِلاسي
clean – تميز	پاك - پاكيزه
clean (to)	تمیز کردن
clever	باهوش- زِرُنا
closed, shut	بسته المالي

cloth, material	پارچه
clothing	لِباس
cloud	اَبر
cloudy	اُبری
coffee	قُهوه
coffee house - كافه	قُهوهخانه -
cold	سُرد
cold (noun)	سردى
colleague	هُمكار
شکّده – مشکّده	کالج – دان آمُوزشگاهُ
colour, shade, dye	رَنگ
comb; shoulders	شانه
come, arrive (to)	آمدَن
comedy	کُمدی
comfortable	راحُت
مولى common	عادی – مَ
منشین companion	مونس – ه
confectionery	شيرينى
congratulations!	تُبریک – مُبارک
consult (to)	، ر مُشوِرَت کر
continously – سته	مُدام – پيوَ يکبند
cook, chef	آشپَز
پزی کردن (cook (to)	پُختن– آش

	,
cool	خنک
correct, right, ex	دُرُست act
corridor, hallway	راهرو- هال
cottage, a small house	كُلبه- آلونك
country	كيشور
cousin, daughter of maternal aun	دُختَرخاله t
cover for books; volume	جِلد
coward, scared	ترسو- بزدل
cry (to)	گریه کردن
cup	فنجان
cutlery knife	کارد
daily	روزانه
dance	رُقصيدن
danger	خَطُر
dangerous	خُطُرناک
dark	تاریک – تیره
date; history	تاريخ
day .	روذ
day after tomorro	پَسفَردا w
day before yesterday	پُريروز
dear	عُزيز

decide (lit. take تُصميم گرِفتن decisions) (to)	dr dr
definitely اُحتماً	dı
delicious, tasty خوشمزه	
deliver; give رساندَن a lift (to)	dı dı
دَندانسان dental technician	dı
دَندانپزِشک dentist	
describe, give تُعریف کردن detailed account (to)	ea
desk, table ميز	ea
despite the – ہا وجودیکہ – fact that	ea
detailed مُفْصل	ea
dictionary فرهنگ - لُغتنامه	ea
سخت – دشوار – difficult	e
پیچیده	e
difficult; problem مشکل	
(direct object marker)	e
نِشانی – آدرس directions,	e
address	
dog سگ	e
عروسک doll	e
door, gate دُر	e
dormitory, hall خوابگاه	e
of residence	e
زیر- پایین down, below	e

میدَنی drink	نوشابه - آشاه
drink (to) میدن	نوشيدن – آشا
گی drive (to)	راندن – رانند
Maria andreas	کردن
dry, arid	خُشک
duration	دوران- طول
dust, earth, soil	خاک
each other گر	دیگری- همدیه
ear	گوش
earring	گوشواره
earthquake 6	زِلزِله- زمينل
easy	ساده- آسان
eat; drink (to)	خوردن
economy	إقتصاد
edges of, next	لَبِ - كنارِ -
to, on the bank	لبهٔ s of
eggplant, auberg	بادنجان gine
eggs	تُخمِمرغ
either or	يايا
electric	برقى
electricity	برق
eleven	يازده
embassy	سفارَت
employee	كارمند
encyclopaedia	دايرهالمعارف

enter (to)	وارِد شدن
entrance; arrival	ورود- ورودیه
equal	برابر- مساوی
equipment, furniture	اَساس- اَسباب- وسایل
et al., etc.; ot	وغيره hers
even	حَتى
everyday	هرروز
examination	إمتحان
excellent, sup	CONTRACTOR OF STREET
exchange of r	riceties تَعارُف
exclamation (
excuse me, fo	بِبَخشيد rgive me
expanse, surfa	أوُسعَت ace area
experiment, to	آزمایِش est
explain (to)	توضيح دادن
eyebrow	اَبرو
eyes	چَشم
factory	كارخانه
familiar	آشنا
family	خانواده- فاميل
family name, surname	اِسمِ فامیل

famous	مُعروف
far, faraway	دور
fast, quick; fast, quickly	تُند- سَريع
fat	چاق – پروار
father	پِدُر اللهِ الله
father-in-law (husband's fath	پِدَرشوهر er)
father-in-law (wife's father)	پدرزن و واس ماهی المطاعم
favourite meeting where people h	The state of the s
fear	تُرس
fellow citizen	همشهرى
fellow traveller	هُمسفُر
festival متيوال	جَشنواره – فس
fiancé(e)	نامزُد
fig	أنجير
fill (to)	پُر کردن
film	فيلم
find (to)	پیدا کردن
finger (or toe)	اَنگُشت
finish, complete (to)	تُمام كردن
fireplace, - a	بُخاری دیواری شومینه
first	أوَل مر معادد

fish ala	آزاد – رایگان free
fix, mend (to) دُرُست کردن	فرانسه - فرانسوی French
florist گُلفُروش گُلفُروش	fresh
flower (arch. roses)	Friday جُمعه – آدينه
flowerpot, vase گُلدان	fridge يُخچال
آبرواز کردن (fly (to)	دوست – رُفيق friend
غذا- خوراكى food	friendly دوستانه
foot; leg	from, of, through
برای برای for	from where? کجایی؟ (re nationality)
for a long while مدتها	front
for example, مثلا for instance	أيخزّده frozen
بیخود - بیخودی for no good	fruit juice آبميوِه
reason, point- بيدليل –	full, satiated
lessly	full of پُر اَذ
خارجی foreign, foreigner	خاکسپاری funeral
forest جَنگُل fork چَنگال	funny (lit. خُنده دار with laughter)
فرم-شكل form	further up بالاتر
iformal prose نَثْر اَدُبِي	future, next
fortunate, happy خوشبخت	good; mor, pleasant vigigai
خودنویس fountain pen	game, play
چهار four	garden
four o'clock ساعتِ چهار	garlic
چهارُم fragrant, nice smelling خوشبو	garlic sausage, کالباس mortadella
ragrant, file sineling	mortuacia

gentleman, sir	آقا
geography	جُغرافي
Germany	آلمان
get married (to)	إزدواج كردن
get or take someth out, bring out (to	
girl, daughter	دُختَر
give (to)	دادن
give discount (to)	تَخفيف دادن
glass	شيشه
glass, tumbler	ليوان
glasses	عينك
go (to)	رَفتن
go off, break down (to)	خراب شدن
god bless, goodbye farewell	e, خُداحافِظ
going for a walk	پیادهروی
golden	طُلایی
good afternoon	عَصربِخِير
good, nice, pleasar	خوب at
good day	روزبخير
good morning	صُبحبِخِير
good night	شُبِخِير
goodbye, بدرود farewell	خُداحافِظ –

government	دولَت
grab, catch, tak	گرِفتن (to) ع
gradually, 'slow slowly', 'calml calmly'	
grandchild	نَوه
grandfather	ۑؚۮؘڕؽؙڒؙڕڲ
grandmother	مادَريُزُرگ
grape	اَنگ ور
grateful	مَمنون
Greece	يونان
green	سَبن
green grocer's	سبزى فروش
greetings	درود - سلام و احوالپُرسی
greetings	
teenval dlui	و أحواليُرسي
grey	و اَحوالپُرسیٰ خاکستری
grey grocer's shop ground, floor,	و اَحوالپُرسیٰ خاکستری بقالی
grey grocer's shop ground, floor, earth, land	و اَحوالپُرسیٰ خاکستری بقالی
grey grocer's shop ground, floor, earth, land	و اَحوالپُرسیٰ خاکستری بَقالی بَقالی زَمین مو - زُلف - گ
grey grocer's shop ground, floor, earth, land hair	و اَحوالپُرسیٰ خاکستری بَقالی بَقالی زَمین مو - زُلف - گ
grey grocer's shop ground, floor, earth, land hair hair	و اَحوالپُرسی خاکستری بَقالی بَقالی زَمین مو - زُلف - گ ber سُلمانی rber
grey grocer's shop ground, floor, earth, land hair hairdresser's, bai half	و اَحوالپُرسی خاکستری بَقالی بَقالی زَمین مو - زُلف - گ ber سُلمانی rber
grey grocer's shop ground, floor, earth, land hair hairdresser's, bar half hammer hand	و اَحوالپُرسی خاکستری بَقالی بَقالی زَمین مو - زُلف - گ ber سُلمانی rber

hat	كُلاه	honey bee	زنبورِ عسل
have had a	خوش گذشتن	honeymoon	ماهِ عَسل
good time (to)	do phow Jadot	hope	أميد
have news (to)	خبر داشتن	horse	اَسب المعادية
have time (to)	وقت داشتن – فُرصنت داشتن	hospital	بيمارستان
he or she	او	hot	گرم – داغ
head	بر سر المدين ديون	hour glass-shaped tea glasses	اِستِکان
healthy	سالم	house warming	منزل مباركم
hear (to)	شنيدن	house, home	خانه- منزل
heart	قلب	how!	چقَدر
heat	گرما - حرارت	how are you?	چطوری
heavy	سنگين	(informal)	CALLEGE AND ASSESSED.
hello	سُلام	how? how come?	چطور؟
help, assist (to)	کُمک کردن	how many?	چَند تا؟
hemisphere	نیمکُرہ	how much? how l	چقدر؟ (ong
herbs	سبزى	how was it?	چطور بود؟
here	اينجا	(idiomatic)	
hesitation	مكث- تَامُل	however, but	ولى - أما
hill	تُهه مططعه ال	hundred	صد ماعجو (د
historic	تاريخي	hungry	گرُسنه
hobby	سَرگرمی	husband	شوهر
holidays, vacat	rion تُعطيلات		
home, house	خانه – مُنزِل	I hope	أميدواركم
home made	خانگی	I'm happy to	خوشبختم
honey	عَسلَ	meet you	

ice	jewellery جُواهِر
icecream بَستَنى	يهودى Jewish
if it's no لُطفاً – بى زُحمَت trouble, please	jobs, work, things that keep one busy
if only, would کاش – کاشکی that importance,	jump (to) پریدن just as, as
significance important	kelim rugs کلیم کتری
in front of, جلوی – روبروی by	kettle کتری key کلید
in tears, tearfully کریان	مِهريان kind
in, at, inside	بوسه – ماچ
India مندوستان	kitchen آشپزخانه
information إطّلاعات	kitchen or other پاقو types of knife
داخل- درون inside	knock (to) دَر زَدن
inside, into تو- توی	know (to) دانستَن
به جای- عوضِ instead of	Asiaphai, Barris, Spend
interesting جالب	lady, madam, term خانُم
introduce (to) – مُعَرِفي كردن	of address for women
آشنا كردن	lake دریاچه
invite (to) دعوت کردن	language (tongue) زَبان
is است	large, big, great بزُرگ
island جُزيره	آخر – آخری
Carbenavia eiterinia	last night ديشُب
jam مُرَبا مُرَبا	last year پارسال

late	دير – ديروقت	lock	قفل
later	ديرتر	long	طولاني
lazy	تُنبِلَ	look at (to)	نگاه کردن
	يادگرفتن – آموخ	look for, search for (to)	دنبال گشتن
leave, give up (to)	رها کردن – ول کردن	lose (to)	گُم کردن
left	چپ	love	عِشق – مُحبَت
lemon	ليمو	low fat	کم چربی
lesson	دُرس	loyal, faithful	با وفا
letter	نامه ' . اَد ا	luckily, fortunately	خوشبختانه
letters of alph bet; spoken	, ,	lukewarm	وِلَرم
level, floor	طَبَقه	lunch	ناهار
library	كتابخانه		Thesass
life	زِندِگی	magazine	مجله
light	نور – روشنایی هٔ.	make a call, telephone (to)	تلفن كردن
light, bright, switched on	روشن	make mistakes (to)	اِشتِباه کردن
light, lamp	چراغ	mama, mummy	مامان- ماما
like (to)	دوست داشتن خُط	man	مُرد
line lip	خط و درو لُب	manners,	اَدَب- تَربيَت
listen (to)	گوش دادن	many, much,	خیلی - بسیار
little	كوچك- كوچولو	very	assorty moen
little, a bit	کمی	marble	مرمر
live (to)	زِندِگی کردن	marrow, courge	ette كُدو

master, teache	اُستاد r	morning	مبع
matches	كبريت	mosque	مُسجِد
maternal aunt		most of, many of	خیلی از- بسیاری از
mausoleum	آرامگاه— مَقْبَره	mother-in-law (husband's moth	مادرشوهر (er
maxim me, mine, my	آرمان مَن	mother-in-law (wife's mother)	مادرزُن
means, tools	وسايل - أسباب	mountain	کوه
meat; flesh	گوشت	mountainous	كوهستاني
meeting, one s	ession جَلِسه	mountainside	كوهستان
meetings, sessi	جَلِسات ons	mouse	موش
melon	طالبي	moustache	سبيل
message	پَيام - پِيغام	mouth	دُهان
Middle East	خاور ميانه	ار much, very	خیلی – بِسی
milk	شيران ۽ ايران	museum	موزه
mind,	تُصور - خيال	music	موسیقی
imagination	restendin akun	Muslim	مُسلَمان
mint	نعناع	my dear	عَزيزَم
mistake	اِشتِباه		
Monday	دوشنبه .	name, title	نام - لَقَب
money	پول	narcissus	گُلِ نَرگِس
monkey	ميمون	narrow, slender	باریک
month; moon	ماه	nasty, mean,	بدجنس
moonlight	مُهتاب	deceitful	and a second
more	بيشتر	nationality	ملِيَت

native of; have اُهلِ	حالا – الآن – اكنون now
a liking for s.t.	number عدد - شماره
nature طبیعت	matagaika aliabataha
near by, close to نزدیک	obnoxious, bolshy پُريو
neck	ocean اُقيانوس
necklace گردُنبَند	of course
needle سوزَن	office حَفتَر office
neighbour هُمسايه	رَسمى official
neither nor نه نه	أغلب - بيشتر اوقات often
never مرکز	oil (as in cooking روغَن
نو – جَديد – تازه new	or motor)
news اَخبار	oil (as in petroleum)
newsagent's روزنامهفروشی	ویر بیر
newspaper روزنامه	old (as in rags) کهنه
next بعدى	old (not for people) قديمى
next to, beside کنار- پهلوی	olives زيتون
night سُب	on, on top of دوی- بالای
نه- نَخیر no	on foot
no longer, no more دیگر (with negative verb)	یکی پس اِز دیگری one after - پشت سر هم
ماج noisy kiss	one by one یکی یکی
morth شُمال	
northeast شُمال شرقی	یکی از one of
northern شُمالی	one year یک سال
بینی – دَماغ nose	onion پیاز
not to be	فَقَط – تَنها only

باز- گَشوده	park ملی	پارک – باغ ه
باز کردن- گُشودن (open (to	parsley	جُعفُرى
ophthalmic چِشمپِزِشک	party	مِهمانی
physician	party, celebration	جَشن ا
orange colour نارنجی	pass by (to)	گُذُشتَن
پُرتُقال oranges	pass by; fail (to)	رَد شدن
r rder	paternal aunt	ممه
order, command, – دُستور	paternal uncle	عمو
irequest فرمان	peace	صلُح
دیگر other	peach	هلو
بیرون outside	pear	گُلابی
بیرون از – بیرون (of) outside	pearl	ر مروارید
دامنه outskirts	pen	قلّم
overcoat, winter coat	pencil	مداد
owner, landlord/ صاحبخانه	people	مَردُم
lady	pepper	فلفل
CERT CAR TO SOLD BO	percentage	دُرصنَد
paint, colour رنگ کردن/زدن in (to)	perhaps	شاید
painter نَقاش	period of stay, residency	إقامت
نقاشی painting	permission	اجازه
pair; mate جفت	Persian Gulf	خُليج فارس
pal, close friend, رفیق comrade	personal, private	شخصی - خصوصی
paper کاغذ	persons	نَفَر
parcel	photograph	عُکس

258

English-Persian glossary

عکاس photographer	post
photographic دوربینِ عکاسی camera	post
photography عكاسى	post
	post
physician, پزِشک - دکتر doctor	pota
صورتی pink	pra
place	pra
places (pl.)	pres
plant, sow (to) کاشتن	pres
plaque, door پلاک - شمارهٔ	pre
number	pre
plate بُشقاب	
لُطفاً - خواهش please مىكُنَم - بى زَحمَت	pric
مىكنَم - بى زُحمَت	priv
poet شاعر	co
poetry med	pro
polite, pleasant خوش و بِش exchanges	pro
6.10.1.0.1.0	pul
political سیاسی	150
political سیاسی pomegranate	pur
pomegranate اُنار	pur
pomegranate اُنار pomegranate juice	pur
pomegranate انار pomegranate juice آب نار poor بینوا poor بینوا poor thing, بیچاره – بینوا	pur pur pur
pomegranate انار pomegranate juice آب نار poor بینوا poor بینوا poor بینوا poor thing, بیچاره بدبخت wretched	pur pur pur

پست کردن st (to) st office كارتپُستال stcard stman tato ctice, exercises تمرین کردن ctise (to) حاضر esent هديه - كادو esent, gift زیبا – قَشَنگ etty پیشگیری-جلوگیری evention ice, value vate, محرمانه onfidential ofession فراهم كردن ovide, bring ogether (to) blic mpkin وقتشناس- سروقت nctual rple الم الم الم t, place; allow (to) estion iet, free of people خُلُوت

quiet, silent ساکِت	rich, wealthy – پولدار –
	ثروتمند – توانگر
rabbit خُرگوش	سوارى riding
radio راديو	اَنگُشتَر ring
rain باران	رودخانه river
بارانی rainy	romantic, عاشقانه lovey-dovey
کمیاب – نایاب rare	room اُتاق
rate, price نرخ - قیمت recognize (to)	room (as in space) جا – فضا
red, crimson سُرخ – قرمز	مُمانتاقى roommate
reduction, discount تَخفيف	گلِ سرخ – صورتی rose
region منطقه	rose water کُلاب
related, connected مربوط	rough (to touch) زبر
relatively نسبتاً	rude, uncouth بى تَربيَت
religious or traditional عيد celebration	روس Russian
remain, stay (to) ماندن	salon, hall, big room سالُن
rent کرایه	نَمک salt
اِجاره کردن (to) rent (to	salty, savoury شور
باسُخ - جَواب reply	Satan (meaning شیطان naughty)
republic جمهوری	Saturday شُنبه
respect احترام	
استراحت کردن (rest (to)	saucer نعلبکی
return (to) برگشتن	say, tell (to) گفتن
revolting بَدَمَزه	ترازو scales
(in taste)	school مُدَرِسه

scientific علمی	sidewalk, pavement پیادهرو	
scissors قیچی	أبريشُم silk	
sea دُريا	silver نُقره	
second دُوم	از – از وقتیکه since	
seconds ثانیه	آواز خواندن (sing (to)	
see (to) دیدن	خواننده singer	
sell (to) فروختن	خواهر sister	
send (to) فرستادن	sit (to)	
seriously جدی	size, amount اُندازه	
election in the fattors in the fattors	skin پوست	
a degree	skirt نامَن	
lead Mayorton and or an known	sky آسمان	
several چندین	sleep (to) خوابیدن	
several, a few	slow; slowly يُواش – يُواش	
Sheep کوسفند	small change پول خُرد	
Shi'ite شیعه		
ship کَشتی		
shirt; dress پیراهن	small rugs قالیچه	
	smaller کوچکتر	
	smelly, pungent بدبو	
short (brief) کوتاه	smilingly, cheerfully خندان	
امامزاده – مقبره shrine	snow برف	
shy, bashful كُمرو - خِجالتى	snowy برفی	
sick, unwell; مریض patient	so, in that پَس – بَنابراین case, therefore,	
side, direction طَرَف	then	
sidestreet کوچهٔ فرعی	socks جوراب	

soft, smooth نَرم	قاشُق spoon
بَعضى some	وَرِزِشِ sport
some places جاهایی	هُمسَر spouse
(indefinite pl.)	spring بَهار
someone; no (هيچكَس – (هيچكَس one (with negative verb)	square (shape) مرَبَع
	stage <u>صحن</u> ه
چیزی something	تمبر stamp
گاهی – بعضی sometimes	گیشه – کیوسک stand, kiosk
وقتها	ستاره star
soon, early زود	statue مُجِسَمَه
غم – اندوه sorrow, grief	still, as yet
soul, life, term of endearment after	stop (as in bus stop), station
proper names sound, noise	store, department فُروشگاه store
r تُرش sour	story, account of
south جُنوب	straight, true, right راست
spacious جادار	street, avenue خیابان
Spain اسپانیا	stuck down چسبیده
speak, talk (to) حُرف زدن	دانِشجو student
special, registered سفارشي	استودیو studio
speech, delivered سُخُنْراني	درس خواندن (to) study
lecture	Sufficient, enough
speed سُرعَت	sugar
spicy, hot تُند	تابستان summer
spinach اسفناج	خورشید – آفتاب sun

Sunday Sunni sunny supper, dinner supporter - موادار - مطرفدار surface surface area, expanse مساحت surgery (doctor's) surgery (operation) شيرين sweet خَرِيزه sweet melon شنا كردن swim (to) خاموش switched off, silent, dark tailor's, dressmaker's خياط take back, get پس گرفتن back, retrieve (to) take, carry away (to) بلُند tall, high چای درس دادن مُعَلِم – آموزگار teach (to) teacher, instructor قورى teapot

اشک tears دندان teeth telephone شماره تلفن telephone number television tell off, rebuke, - دعوا کردن پرخاش کردن argue (to) temple tenth نونم - thank you that that very theatre then آنوقت then there (and then) همانجا there, that place أنها - ايشان they (their, them as possessor) كُلُفت thick نازُک thin, fine باریک – لاغر فکر کردن گُرُسنه thin, skinny think (to) thirsty

this year	إمسال	trade	تِجارَت
thought, idea	فكر - نَظَر	train	تِرَن – قَطار
thousand	هزار	journey	سَفَر – مُسافِرَت
thread	نَحْ ولا الله	travel,	desper, dimeer
throat	كُلُو	travel (to)	سَفُر کردن–
Thursday	يَنجِشَنبه	and the last	مسافرت کردن
ticket	بليط	traveller, passenger	مسافر
tie up, wrap, close, shut (to)	بستن	tray	سینی
tiger	ببرائد سور	tree	درخت
time	وُقت – زُمان	triangle	مثلث
time to time	کاه کاه	trousers	شكوار
tiny, very small	کوچولو –	Tuesday	سەشنبە
	کوچک – ر	tulips	KIP
tired	خُسته	tuna fish	ماهى تُن
to	به	two or three	دو سه ساعت
to (used for peopl	e: پیش	hours	
going to s.o.); at	rect dissile	type	نوع – جور
to your health	به سلامتی		
today	إمروز	ugly	زِشت – بدتُركيب
tomato	گوجه فَرَنگی	umbrella	چُتر
tomorrow	فُردا	uncomfortable	ناراحت
tonight	إمشب اسس	under, beneath	زير
toothbrush	مسواک	undoubtedly	بدون شک –
toothpaste	خُميردُندان	- Have the second	بى تُرديد
fourist بَهانگرد	توریست – م	unemployed; n	ot busy بیکار

264

English-Persian glossary

unfaithful, disloy	ral بى وكفا	watch, look at (to)	نگاه –
unfortunate,	بُدبَخت –	Aced O	تَماشا كرد
unlucky	بدشانس	water	البيادات
unfortunately	بدبختانه	water melon	هندوانه
university	دانشگاه	way, path, road	راه
until, up	تا	we, us	ماريد
up	بالا	wear (to)	پوشیدن
	استفاده كردن	weather (also air)	هُوا
from (to)	walter	wedding	عروسي
usual	معمول	Wednesday	چهارشنبه
	(authoral) sev	week	هَفته
vacuum cleaner	جاروبرقی	weight	ف نن
varied, تَلِف different	مُتِفاوِت - مُخ	welcome	خوشآمد
various	كوناكون	well equipped	مجهز
vegetables	سبزيجات	west	غرب
vegetarian	سُبزيخوار	western	غربى
very good	خیلی خوب	wet	خيس
vet	دامپزشک	what; how!	!4\$
view	مَنظَرَه	what a pity, المنابعة المنابع	چه بد! چه ح
visa	ويزا – رواديد	what kind,	چه نوع؟
		sort?	چه جور؟
war	جُنگ	when	کی؟
warm (hot)	كُرم	when, at the	وُقتيكه -
wash (to)	شُستن	time that	منگامیکه
wasp	زُنبور	whenever	هروقت

where?	كُجا؟	worker, labourer	کارگر :
wherever	هُرجا	workshop	کارگاه
which?	كُدام؟	world	دُنيا - جَهان
whichever	هَركُدام	write (to)	نوشتن
while	در حالیکه	writer	نويسنده
white	سفيد		
who, whom?	کی؟	year	سال
رکس – whoever	مرکه – مر	year(s) ago	سال(ها)پیش
	هرکسیکه	yellow	زُرد
why? why do you ask? (idiomatic)	چرا؟	yes	بلَه
wide	3055	yes (informal), 'y	آره 'qup'
	پهن زن	yesterday	ديروز
wife, woman		yoghurt	ماست
wild	وحشى	you are welcome	خوش آمدید
wind	ہاد َ َ	you (pl.)	شُما
window	پنجره	you (sing.)	تو
winter	زمستان	young; youth (pe	
winter snowboots	پوتین		
with, by	با	Z00	ياغ مُحش
with common borde	EL CRISTORIA CHI CONTROLLO IN CONTROL	Zoroastrian	باغ وحش زُرتُشتی
sharing the same b	order	Zoroastrian	ررستي
with difficulty	به سختی		
	بدون – بی		
wooden	چوبی		
word	لُغَت – كَلِم		
work (to)	کار کردن		